

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE, BID FORM  
and  
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

**\$7,000,000\***

**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*(San Augustine County, Texas)*

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds**  
**Series 2021A**

*Bids Due*  
*August 12, 2021*  
*at 10:00 a.m., Central Time*

---

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

*This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement.*

## OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

**\$7,000,000\***

**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in San Augustine County, Texas)**

### UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021A

#### THE SALE

**BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID:** The Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Broaddus Independent School District (the "District" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$7,000,000\* Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A (the "Bonds"). Bidders may submit bids for the Bonds by either of the following methods:

- (1) Submit bids electronically as described below in "BIDS BY INTERNET;" or
- (2) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "BIDS BY FACSIMILE."

**BIDS BY INTERNET:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on August 12, 2021. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on August 12, 2021 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile, as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact i-Deal LLC at 1359 Broadway, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10018, Telephone 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of PARITY shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the Issuer. The Issuer shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

**BIDS BY FACSIMILE:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by facsimile to the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Attention: Mr. Doug Whitt at (214) 279-8683 by 10:00 A.M., Central time, on August 12, 2021. Bidders submitting a bid by facsimile **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit a bid by facsimile should, as a courtesy, submit an email message to [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com) by 9:00 A.M., Central time, on August 12, 2021 indicating their intent to submit a bid by facsimile.

Neither the District nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of either of the Financial Advisor's or the bidder's fax machine. Bids received by facsimile after the bid deadline will not be accepted. Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids are binding on the bidder.

**PLACE AND TIME OF BID OPENING:** The bids for the Bonds will be opened at the District's offices at 10:00 A.M. Central time, on August 12, 2021.

**AWARD OF THE BONDS:** The Board will take action to award the Bonds (or reject all bids) at a meeting to commence at 7:00 P.M., Central Time, on August 12, 2021.

#### THE BONDS

**DESCRIPTION:** The Bonds will be dated August 15, 2021 (the "Dated Date"). Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date and will be due on February 15, 2022, and each August 15 and February 15 thereafter until maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company New York, New York ("DTC"). DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

*\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

**MATURITY SCHEDULE:** The Bonds will be stated to mature on February 15 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

Maturity	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)	Maturity	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)
2022	\$570,000		2035	\$275,000	
2023	445,000		2036	285,000	
2024	320,000		2037	295,000	
2025	195,000		2038	305,000	
2026	200,000		2039	315,000	
2027	205,000		2040	325,000	
2028	215,000		2041	335,000	
2029	220,000		2042	240,000	
2030	230,000		2043	245,000	
2031	240,000		2044	250,000	
2032	245,000		2045	260,000	
2033	255,000		2046	265,000	
2034	265,000				

**ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS:** After selecting the winning bid, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the principal amortization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the District and its Financial Advisor in \$5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create a substantially level debt service schedule for the District. Such adjustments will not change the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds by more than 10% from the amount set forth herein or change the principal amount due on the Bonds in any year by more than 20% (excluding maturities 2042 through 2046). The dollar amount bid for the Bonds by the winning bidder will be adjusted proportionately to reflect any increase or decrease in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds finally determined to be issued. The District will use its best efforts to communicate to the winning bidder any such adjustment within eight (8) hours after the opening of the bids. Purchaser's compensation will be based upon the final par amount after any adjustment thereto, subsequent to the receipt and tabulation of the winning bid, within the aforementioned parameters.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Bonds as described above, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and/or the maturity schedule for the Bonds made by the District or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Bonds to the winning bidder as determined pursuant to "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – BASIS OF AWARD" herein and shall not affect such determination. The winning bidder may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

**SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS:** Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that any two or more consecutive maturities from 2029 through 2046 be combined into one or more term bonds (the "Term Bonds").

**MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION:** If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on February 15 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on February 15 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption "MATURITY SCHEDULE" (subject to adjustment, as provided in "ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS"). Term Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Term Bonds then subject to redemption. The District, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which have been purchased and canceled by the District and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

**QUALIFIED TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS:** The District will designate the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**OPTIONAL REDEMPTION:** The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption.

**AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE AND SECURITY FOR PAYMENT:** The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 1, 2021 and an order (the "Order") to be adopted by the District's Board on August 12, 2021. The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes to be levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. (See "THE BONDS – Security" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR:** The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

In the Order the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, such Paying Agent/Registrar, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, is required to deliver the Security Register to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

In the event there is a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the District has agreed to notify each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at the address in the Security Register, stating the effective date of the change and the mailing address of the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

**BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM:** The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDER:** Further details regarding the Bonds and certain covenants of the District contained in the Order are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

## CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

**TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES:** The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than their par value, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date of the Bonds to the date of Initial Delivery (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than \$102.00 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS."** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. **The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 300 basis points (or 3.00% in rate). No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used.** All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered.

**BASIS OF AWARD:** The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein and which produces the **lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate on the Bonds to the District.** The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the **Dated Date** of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid. In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the District with information required to be submitted to the Texas Bond Review Board pursuant to Section 1202.008, Texas Government Code, as amended, the Initial Purchaser will be required to provide the District with a breakdown of its "underwriting spread" among the following categories: Takedown, Management Fee (if any), Legal Counsel Fee (if any) and Spread Expenses (if any).

**ESTABLISHING THE ISSUE PRICE FOR THE BONDS:** In order to provide the Issuer with information that enables it to comply with certain requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended relating to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the winning bidder will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the Issuer or to the Issuer's municipal advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Issuer's Municipal Advisor") (within 5 business days of the date on which the 10% Test, as defined below, is satisfied with respect to each of the maturities of the Bonds) a certification as to the Bonds' "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") substantially in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Notice of Sale. In the event the winning bidder will not reoffer any maturity of the Bonds for sale to the Public (as defined herein) by the Closing Date, the Issue Price Certificate may be modified in a manner approved by the Issuer. Each bidder, by submitting its bid, agrees to complete, execute, and timely deliver the Issue Price Certificate, if its bid is accepted by the Issuer. It will be the responsibility of the winning bidder to institute such syndicate reporting requirements, to make such investigation, or otherwise to ascertain such facts necessary to enable it to make such certification with reasonable certainty. Any questions concerning such certification should be directed to Bond Counsel (identified in the Preliminary Official Statement).

For purposes of this section of this Notice of Sale:

- (i) "Public" means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a Related Party,
- (ii) "Underwriter" means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead Underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a third-party distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public),
- (iii) "Related Party" means any two or more persons (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) that are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) more than 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other), and
- (iv) "Sale Date" means the date that the Bonds are awarded by the Issuer to the winning bidder.

All actions to be taken by the Issuer under this Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Bonds may be taken on behalf of the Issuer by the Issuer's Municipal Advisor, and any notice or report to be provided to the Issuer may be provided to the Issuer's Municipal Advisor.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to this Notice of Sale to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds, as specified in the bid and, if so stated, in the Official Bid Form.

The Issuer intends to rely on Treasury Regulation section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of municipal bonds), which requires, among other things, that the Issuer receives bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds (the "Competitive Sale Requirement").

The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein. In the event that the bidding process does not satisfy the Competitive Sale Requirement, bids will not be subject to cancellation and the winning bidder will be required to hold-the-offering-price of each maturity of the Bonds, other than any maturity 10% of which have been sold to the Public on the Sale Date at the initial offering prices or any higher prices ("Hold-the-Price Bonds"), as described in the next paragraph.

By submitting a bid, the winning bidder agrees, on behalf of each Underwriter participating in the purchase of the Bonds, that each Underwriter will neither offer nor sell any maturity of the Hold-the-Price Bonds to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the Public during the period starting on the Sale Date and ending on the earlier of the following:

- (1) the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the Sale Date; or
- (2) the date on which the Underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the Public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the Public.

The winning bidder shall promptly advise the Issuer when such bidder has sold at least 10% of a maturity of the Hold-the-Price Bonds to the Public at a price that is not higher than the initial offering price to the Public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5th) business day after the Sale Date.

In the event that the bidding process does not satisfy the Competitive Sale Requirement, in order to assist the Issuer with documenting the establishment of the issue prices of the Bonds, the winning bidder agrees to promptly report to the Issuer the prices at which at least 10% of each maturity of the Bonds have been sold to the Public (the "10% Test") (if different interest rates apply within a maturity, each separate CUSIP number within that maturity will be subject to the 10% Test). That reporting obligation shall continue until 10% of each maturity of the Bonds is sold to the Public. By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each third-party distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each Underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such third-party distribution agreement, as applicable, to report the prices at which it sells to the Public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder that either the 10% Test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the Public, if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder and as set forth in the related pricing wires, and (ii) any agreement among underwriters relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter that is a party to a third-party distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public to require each broker-dealer that is a party to such third-party distribution agreement to report the prices at which it sells to the Public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder or such Underwriter that either the 10% Test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the Public, if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder or such Underwriter and as set forth in the related pricing wires.

**GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT:** A bank cashier's check, payable to the order of "Broaddus Independent School District", in the amount of \$140,000 which is 2% of the proposed par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required to accompany any bid. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be retained uncashed by the District pending the Purchaser's compliance with the terms of its bid and this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the Purchaser should fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds in accordance with its bid, then said check shall be cashed and accepted by the District as full and complete liquidated damages. The Good Faith Deposit may accompany the Official Bid Form or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the District prior to the opening of the bids, and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which authorizes its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. **The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery.** No interest will be allowed on the Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying bids other than the winning bid will be returned promptly after the bids are opened, and an award of the Bonds has been made by the District.

**ADDITIONAL CONDITIONS OF AWARD — DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:**

Obligation of the District to receive information from winning bidder. In accordance with Texas Government Code, Section 2252.908, (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act") the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the winning bidder either:

- (i) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"),
- or
- (ii) certifies in the Official Bid Form that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

In the event that the bidder's bid for the Bonds is the best bid received, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning bidder. That notification will serve as the District's conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and, unless the bidder is exempt from filing a Disclosure Form, such notification will obligate the winning bidder to promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the District to complete the award. The District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not comply with the requirements prescribed herein.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 – name of the governmental entity (*Broaddus Independent School District*) and (b) item 3 – the identification number assigned to this contract by the District (*0001*) and description of the goods or services (*Purchase of the Broaddus Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A*). **The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the "Disclosure Rules") require certain business entities contracting with the District to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm>, print, complete the unsworn declaration, sign, and deliver the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's "electronic portal" to the District. The completed and signed Disclosure Form must be sent by email, to the District's financial advisor at [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com) as soon as possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award.** Upon receipt of the final written award, the winning bidder must submit the Disclosure Form with original signatures by email to Bond Counsel as follows: [cbinford@mphlegal.com](mailto:cbinford@mphlegal.com).

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. To the extent that the bidder is not exempt from filing a Disclosure Form and therefor makes such filing with the District, the Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provide that such declaration is made "under penalty of perjury." Consequently, a bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. **Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the District, and no final award will be made by the District regarding the sale of the Bonds until a completed Disclosure Form is received. The District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein.** Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form promptly upon notification from the District that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC's website at [https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm).

**IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD:** For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

**NO BOYCOTT OF ISRAEL VERIFICATION:** Pursuant to Chapter 2271, Texas Government Code, as amended ("Chapter 2271") the District and other governmental entities in the State may not enter into a contract with a company for goods or services unless the contract contains a written verification from the company that it: (1) does not boycott Israel; and (2) will not boycott Israel during the term of the contract. To enable the District to comply with Chapter 2271, and to enable it to contract for the sale of the Bonds, the Official Bid Form for the Bonds includes a written verification of the bidder to the effect described above. Each bidder should review the "no Israel boycott verification" included in the Official Bid Form prior to making a bid for the Bonds to determine whether such statement can be made, which is a condition to making a bid for the Bonds.

**VERIFICATION OF NO DEALINGS WITH FOREIGN TERRORIST ORGANIZATIONS:** Pursuant to Chapter 2252, Texas Government Code, the District will not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the bidder certifies that neither it nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the same, is a company that contracts with or provides supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization, as defined by Section 2252.151(2), Texas Government Code, or identified as a company known to have contracts with or provide supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization as identified on a list prepared and maintained under Sections 2270.0201 or 2252.153, Texas under Sections 2270.0201 or 2252.153, Texas Government Code. By submitting a bid, the potential purchaser makes and certifies to the representations necessary and convenient for the compliance with the aforementioned laws and, at the request of the District, agrees to execute further written certifications as may be necessary or convenience for the District to establish compliance with the aforementioned laws.

## OFFICIAL STATEMENT

To assist the winning bidder (the "Purchaser" or Initial Purchaser") in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"), the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

**COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 15c2-12 OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION:** The Issuer has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the Issuer deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, yields, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Initial Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the Issuer of the initial offering prices/yields of the Bonds.

Thereafter, the Issuer will complete and authorize distribution of the final Official Statement, being a modification of the Preliminary Official Statement, identifying the Initial Purchaser and containing such omitted information. The Issuer does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Initial Purchaser on or after the sale date, the Issuer intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Issuer makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under "CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO-LITIGATION" as described below.

**FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** The Issuer will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of one hundred (100) copies of the Official Statement, together with information regarding interest rates, and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds. In addition, the District agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a "designated electronic format" (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The District consents to the distribution of such documents in a "designated electronic format." Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with MSRB Rule G-32. The Purchaser may arrange at its own expense to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the Issuer and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the Issuer will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The Issuer's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate 25 days after the date of Initial Delivery.

**CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the Issuer learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Initial Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be incomplete or materially misleading, and unless the Initial Purchaser

elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS – CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY," the Issuer will promptly prepare and supply to the Initial Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement, in a "designated electronic format" satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

**CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO-LITIGATION:** At the time of payment for and delivery of the hereinafter defined Initial Bond ("Initial Delivery"), the Initial Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the Issuer, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Issuer contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the Initial Delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the Issuer and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the Issuer, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Issuer believes to be reliable and the Issuer has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; (d) except as may be otherwise described in the Official Statement, there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the Issuer, since August 31, 2020, the date of the last financial statements of the Issuer appearing in the Official Statement; and (e) no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of the date hereof, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds. The Official Statement and this Official Notice of Sale will be approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds will be authorized, ratified and approved by the Board in the Order, and the Initial Purchaser will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the Issuer.

**CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT:** The District has agreed in the Order to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Order containing the agreement described under such heading.

**COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS:** During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all continuing disclosure agreements made in accordance with the Rule. Due to Hurricane Harvey (and subsequent closure by the District and the local financial institution), the District did not timely make its September 1, 2017 interest payment. The payment was made on September 5, 2017, the date of the bank's re-opening.

## **DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS**

**INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND:** Initial Delivery will be accomplished by the issuance of one or more fully registered Bonds in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to the Purchaser (the "Initial Bond"), signed by the duly appointed officers of the Board, by their manual, electronic, or facsimile signatures, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bonds, they shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Bond for each maturity of the Bonds payable to Cede & Co. will be delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Bonds must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the District, or as otherwise directed by the District. The Purchaser will be given six business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that the delivery of the Initial Bond can be made on or about September 9, 2021, but if for any reason the District is unable to make delivery by October 7, 2021, then the District shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds an additional thirty days. If the Purchaser does not elect to extend its offer within six days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the District and the Purchaser shall be relieved of any further obligation. In no event shall the District be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided that such failure is due to circumstances beyond the District's reasonable control.

**CUSIP NUMBERS:** It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Initial Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the Issuer; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Initial Purchaser.

**CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY:** The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, the Initial Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel and the District's certificate regarding the Official Statement as described under "CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO-LITIGATION," and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE". In addition, if the Issuer fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Initial Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the Issuer within five (5) days thereafter.

**NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE:** The obligations of the Initial Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the Issuer to deliver the Initial Bonds, are subject to the condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bonds, there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the Issuer subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of Initial Delivery.

**LEGAL OPINIONS:** The District will furnish the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas as to the Bonds, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel, regarding the legality and validity of the Bonds issued in compliance with the provisions of the Order. (See "LITIGATION" and "LEGAL MATTERS" in the Official Statement and "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" attached to the Official Statement.)

**CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS:** At any time before the Bonds are tendered for initial delivery to the Initial Purchaser, the Initial Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income,

as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by Treasury regulations, by ruling or administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

**RATING:** The Bonds are rated “Aaa” by Moody’s Investors Service, Inc. (“Moody’s”) “based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District’s unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is “A1” from Moody’s. There is no assurance that any such rating will continue for any given period of time or that a rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of said rating company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of one or more ratings may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds. A securities rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell, or hold securities.

**CONCURRENT ISSUANCE OF DEBT:** On August 12, 2021, the date the Board is expected to take action to award the Bonds to the winning bidder, the Board will also be taking action to award the sale of the District’s Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021 (the “Series 2021 Bonds”). The Series 2021 Bonds will be sold and issued separately pursuant to a separate notice of sale and offering document, but are not otherwise described in the Official Statement except for the information included on the cover and in the subsection entitled “INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT – Concurrent Issuance of Debt”, and the incorporation of the expected issuance of the Series 2021 Bonds into certain tables relating to the District’s total ad valorem tax-supported indebtedness. Investors interested in making an investment decision concerning the Series 2021 Bonds should review the notice of sale and offering document related thereto.

**REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE:** No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Issuer agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser’s written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but the District will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state in which the Bonds are offered for sale.

**ADDITIONAL COPIES:** Subject to the limitations described herein, additional copies of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024.

On the date of sale of the Bonds, the Board will, in the Order, approve the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and to authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

*/s/ Travis Elizalde*

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

*/s/ Michael Sowell*

Secretary, Board of Trustees

Dated: August 5, 2021



**OFFICIAL BID FORM**

President and Board of Trustees  
 Broaddus Independent School District  
 One Bulldog Plaza  
 Broaddus, Texas 75929

August 12, 2021

Ladies & Gentlemen:

Reference is made to your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated August 5, 2021 of \$7,000,000\* BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021A (the "Bonds"), both of which constitute a part hereof.

For your legally issued Bonds, as described in said Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement, we will pay you a price of par value thereof plus accrued interest from their Dated Date to the date of delivery to us, plus a cash premium of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ **(no bid producing a cash premium that results in a dollar price of less than \$102.00 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered)** for Bonds maturing and bearing interest as follows:

Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)	Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)
2022	\$570,000	_____	2035	\$275,000	_____
2023	445,000	_____	2036	285,000	_____
2024	320,000	_____	2037	295,000	_____
2025	195,000	_____	2038	305,000	_____
2026	200,000	_____	2039	315,000	_____
2027	205,000	_____	2040	325,000	_____
2028	215,000	_____	2041	335,000	_____
2029	220,000	_____	2042	240,000	_____
2030	230,000	_____	2043	245,000	_____
2031	240,000	_____	2044	250,000	_____
2032	245,000	_____	2045	260,000	_____
2033	255,000	_____	2046	265,000	_____
2034	265,000	_____			

(Interest to Accrue from the Dated Date)

Of the principal maturities of the Bonds set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include multiple Term Bonds, one Term Bond or no Term Bond if none is indicated). For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table above will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

Term Bond Maturity Date	Year of First Mandatory Redemption	Principal Amount of Term Bond	Interest Rate
February 15	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Our calculation (which is not a part of this bid) of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

TRUE INTEREST COST \_\_\_\_\_ %

By accepting this bid, we understand the District will provide the copies of the Official Statement and of any amendments or supplements thereto in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale.

The Initial Bond shall be registered in the name of the syndicate manager. We will advise DTC of registration instructions at least five business days prior to the date set for Initial Delivery. It is the obligation of the Purchaser of the Bonds to complete the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

Cashier's Check of the \_\_\_\_\_ (bank), \_\_\_\_\_ (location), in the amount of \$140,000 which represents our Good Faith Deposit is attached hereto or has been made available to you prior to the opening of the bid, in accordance with the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the closing.

We agree to accept delivery of the Initial Bond through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bond in immediately available funds at BOKF, NA Dallas, Texas, no later than 10:00 A.M., Central time, on September 9, 2021 or thereafter on the date the Initial Bond are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to the Notice of Sale relating to the Bonds to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds.

The undersigned agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to the District.

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

No Boycott of Israel Verification. To the extent this bid for the Bonds represents a contract for goods or services within the meaning of Section 2271.002 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, the Purchaser verifies, for purposes of Chapter 2271 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, that, except to the extent otherwise required by applicable state or federal law, at the time of execution and delivery of this bid and to the date of delivery of the Bonds, neither the Purchaser, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of the Purchaser, boycotts or will boycott Israel. The terms "company", "boycotts Israel" and "boycott Israel" as used in this paragraph have the meanings assigned to the term "boycott Israel" in Section 808.001 of the Texas Government Code, as amended.

Verification Regarding Foreign Terrorist Organizations. The Purchaser represents that neither it nor any of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates is a company identified on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under section 2252.153 or Section 2270.0201, Texas Government Code, as amended, and posted on any of the following pages of such officer's Internet website:

<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/sudanlist.pdf>,  
<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/iran-list.pdf>, or  
<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/ftolist.pdf>.

The foregoing representation is made solely to comply with Section 2252.152, Texas Government Code, as amended, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable State or federal law and excludes the Purchaser and the Purchaser's parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, that the United States government has affirmatively declared to be excluded from its federal sanctions regime relating to Sudan or Iran or any federal sanctions regime relating to a foreign terrorist organization. The Purchaser understands "affiliate" to mean any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, the Purchaser and exists to make a profit

In accordance with Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the "Interested Party Disclosure Act"), the District may not award the Bonds to a bidder unless the winning bidder either:

(i) submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission ("TEC"),

or

(ii) certifies below that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity.

Unless the bidder certifies that it is exempt from filing a Disclosure Form with the District, upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance and if required, the undersigned will complete an electronic form of the Disclosure Form through the TEC electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed and sent by email to the District's financial advisor at [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com). The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form will prohibit the District from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

The Purchaser (mark one):

(i) Agrees to timely make a filing of a completed Disclosure Form with the District

or

(ii) Hereby certifies that it is exempt from filing the Disclosure Form by virtue of being a publicly traded business entity or a wholly owned subsidiary of a publicly traded business entity .

Respectfully submitted,

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Purchaser)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature - Title)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Telephone)

**ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE**

THE FOREGOING BID IS IN ALL THINGS HEREBY ACCEPTED this August 12, 2021 by the Order of the Board of Trustees of the Broaddus Independent School District.

---

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

---

Secretary, Board of Trustees

# CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

FORM 1295

1 of 1

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.  
 Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

**OFFICE USE ONLY  
 CERTIFICATION OF FILING**

**1 Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.**

**2 Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.**

Broaddus Independent School District

**3 Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the services, goods, or other property to be provided under the contract.**

0001

Purchase of the Broaddus Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A

4	Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of interest (check applicable)	
			Controlling	Intermediary

**5 Check only if there is NO Interested Party.**

**6 UNSWORN DECLARATION**

My name is \_\_\_\_\_, and my date of birth is \_\_\_\_\_.

My address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
(street) (city) (state) (zip code) (country)

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed in \_\_\_\_\_ County, State of \_\_\_\_\_, on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.  
(month) (year)

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity  
 (Declarant)

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

**(Form of Certificate if at least 3 bids are received from underwriters)**

The undersigned, as the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters (“Purchaser”), with respect to the purchase at competitive sale of the Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A issued by the Broaddus Independent School District (“Issuer”) in the principal amount of \$7,000,000\* (“Bonds”), hereby certifies and represents, based on its records and information, as follows:

- (a) On the first day on which there was a binding contract in writing for the purchase of the Bonds by the Purchaser, the Purchaser’s reasonably expected initial offering prices of each maturity of the Bonds with the same credit and payment terms (the “Expected Offering Prices”) to a person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter are as set forth in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds, as attached to this Certificate as Schedule A. The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Bonds used by the Purchaser in formulating its bid to purchase the Bonds.
- (b) The Purchaser had an equal opportunity to bid to purchase the Bonds and it was not given the opportunity to review other bids that was not equally given to all other bidders (i.e., no last look).
- (c) The bid submitted by the Purchaser constituted a firm bid to purchase the Bonds.

For purposes of this Issue Price Certificate, the term “Underwriter” means (1) (i) a person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, or (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (1)(i) of this paragraph (including a member of a selling group or a party to a third-party distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (2) any person who has more than 50% common ownership, directly or indirectly, with a person described in clause (1) of this paragraph.

The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Federal Tax Certificate and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds. Notwithstanding anything set forth herein, the Purchaser is not engaged in the practice of law and makes no representation as to the legal sufficiency of the factual matters set forth herein.

EXECUTED and DELIVERED as of this [ISSUE DATE].

[NAME OF PURCHASER], as Purchaser

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

\* Preliminary, subject to change. See “THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS” herein.

ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE

**(Form of Certificate if less than 3 bids are received from underwriters)**

The undersigned, as the underwriter or the manager of the syndicate of underwriters (“Purchaser”), with respect to the purchase at competitive sale of the Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A issued by the Broadus Independent School District (“Issuer”) in the principal amount of \$7,000,000\* (“Bonds”), hereby certifies and represents, based on its records and information, as follows:

(a) [Other than the Bonds maturing in \_\_\_\_ (“Hold-the-Price Maturities”), the][The] first prices at which at least ten percent (“Substantial Amount”) of the principal amount of each maturity of the Bonds having the same credit and payment terms (“Maturity”) was sold to a person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter (“Public”) are their respective initial offering prices, as listed in the pricing wire or equivalent communication for the Bonds that is attached to this Certificate as Schedule A.

(Add (b) and (c) only if winning bidder designates one or more maturities as Hold-the-Price Maturities)

(b) On or before the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of the Bonds (“Sale Date”), the Purchaser offered to the Public each Maturity of the Hold-the-Price Maturities at their respective initial offering prices, as set forth in Schedule A hereto (“Initial Offering Price”).

(c) As set forth in the Notice of Sale, the Purchaser agreed in writing to neither offer nor sell any of the Hold-the-Price Maturities to any person at any higher price than the Initial Offering Price for each such Maturity until the earlier of the close of the fifth business day after the Sale Date or the date on which the Purchaser sells at least ten percent of a Hold-the-Price-Maturity of the Bonds to the Public at no higher price than the Initial Offering Price for such Maturity.

For purposes of this Issue Price Certificate, the term “Underwriter” means (1) (i) a person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, or (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (1)(i) of this paragraph (including a member of a selling group or a party to a third-party distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (2) any person who has more than 50% common ownership, directly or indirectly, with a person described in clause (1) of this paragraph.

The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Federal Tax Certificate and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds. Notwithstanding anything set forth herein, the Purchaser is not engaged in the practice of law and makes no representation as to the legal sufficiency of the factual matters set forth herein.

EXECUTED and DELIVERED as of this [ISSUE DATE].

[NAME OF PURCHASER], as Purchaser

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

\* Preliminary, subject to change. See “THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS” herein.

SCHEDULE A

PRICING WIRE OR EQUIVALENT COMMUNICATION

*(Attached)*

**BOND YEARS**

**\$7,000,000\***

**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

(San Augustine County, Texas)

**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021A**

Dated: August 15, 2021

Due: February 15

Year	Amount*	Bond Years*	
		Bond Years	Cumulative Bond Years
2022	\$ 570,000	246.9810	246.9810
2023	445,000	637.8185	884.7995
2024	320,000	778.6560	1,663.4555
2025	195,000	669.4935	2,332.9490
2026	200,000	886.6600	3,219.6090
2027	205,000	1,113.8265	4,333.4355
2028	215,000	1,383.1595	5,716.5950
2029	220,000	1,635.3260	7,351.9210
2030	230,000	1,939.6590	9,291.5800
2031	240,000	2,263.9920	11,555.5720
2032	245,000	2,556.1585	14,111.7305
2033	255,000	2,915.4915	17,027.2220
2034	265,000	3,294.8245	20,322.0465
2035	275,000	3,694.1575	24,016.2040
2036	285,000	4,113.4905	28,129.6945
2037	295,000	4,552.8235	32,682.5180
2038	305,000	5,012.1565	37,694.6745
2039	315,000	5,491.4895	43,186.1640
2040	325,000	5,990.8225	49,176.9865
2041	335,000	6,510.1555	55,687.1420
2042	240,000	4,903.9920	60,591.1340
2043	245,000	5,251.1585	65,842.2925
2044	250,000	5,608.3250	71,450.6175
2045	260,000	6,092.6580	77,543.2755
2046	265,000	6,474.8245	84,018.1000

Average Maturity = 12.003

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS - ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.



**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**  
**Dated: August 5, 2021**

**NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

*In the opinion of McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

*The Bonds will be designated, or deemed designated, by the District as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions.*

**\$7,000,000\***  
**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in San Augustine County, Texas)**  
**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A**

**Dated Date: August 15, 2021**

**Due: February 15, as shown on the inside cover page**

The Broaddus Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 1, 2021 and an order (the "Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds to be adopted on August 12, 2021 by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Broaddus Independent School District (the "District"). The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing February 15, 2022, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date.

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company New York, New York ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) design, construct, renovate, improve, upgrade, update, acquire and equip school facilities in the District and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption"). If two or more serial bonds of consecutive maturities are combined into one or more "Term Bonds" by the winning bidder for the Bonds, such Term Bonds will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Order (see "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption").

On August 12, 2021, the date the Board is expected to take action to award the Bonds to the winning bidder, the Board will also be taking action to award the sale of the District's Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021 (the "Series 2021 Bonds"). The Series 2021 Bonds will be sold and issued separately pursuant to a separate notice of sale and offering document, but are not otherwise described in this Official Statement except for the information included in the subsection entitled "INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT – Concurrent Issuance of Debt," and the incorporation of the expected issuance of the Series 2021 Bonds into certain tables relating to the District's total ad valorem tax-supported indebtedness. Investors interested in making an investment decision concerning the Series 2021 Bonds should review the notice of sale and offering document related thereto

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
(On Inside Cover)

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser (the "Purchaser" or the "Initial Purchaser") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about September 9, 2021.*

**BIDS DUE AUGUST 12, 2021 BY 10:00 A.M., CENTRAL TIME**

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

**\$7,000,000\***  
**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in San Augustine County, Texas)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021A**

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**  
Base CUSIP No.: 11132K<sup>(1)</sup>

<b>Maturity Date 2/15</b>	<b>Principal Amount*</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Initial Yield</b>	<b>CUSIP No. Suffix<sup>(1)</sup></b>
2022	\$570,000			
2023	445,000			
2024	320,000			
2025	195,000			
2026	200,000			
2027	205,000			
2028	215,000			
2029	220,000			
2030	230,000			
2031	240,000			
2032	245,000			
2033	255,000			
2034	265,000			
2035	275,000			
2036	285,000			
2037	295,000			
2038	305,000			
2039	315,000			
2040	325,000			
2041	335,000			
2042	240,000			
2043	245,000			
2044	250,000			
2045	260,000			
2046	265,000			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

<sup>\*</sup>Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of The American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

# BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Date Initially Elected</u>	<u>Current Term Expires</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Travis Elizalde, President	2018	2022	Self Employed
Doug Sowell, Vice President	2018	2022	Poultry Grower
Michael Sowell, Secretary	2016	2024	Forest Service
Jathan Green, Member	2020	2021	Pastor
Micha Miller, Member	2016	2024	Trucking Contractor
Charlene Williams, Member	2018	2022	Teacher
Joe Williams, Member	2018	2022	Oil Field

## APPOINTED OFFICIALS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Education Service</u>	<u>Length of Service with the District</u>
Lucas Holloway	Superintendent	11 Years	5 Years
Leah Holloway	Business Manager	19 Years	19 Years

## CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Axley & Rode LLP, Lufkin, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Lucas Holloway  
Superintendent  
Broaddus Independent School District  
One Bulldog Plaza  
Broaddus, Texas 75929  
(936) 872-3041

Doug Whitt / Brian Grubbs / Robert White  
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210  
Plano, Texas 75024  
(214) 765-1469  
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

**USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District or the Financial Advisor. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE INITIAL PURCHASER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THE BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASER MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY ("TEA") DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY DTC AND TEA, RESPECTIVELY.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21E OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THIS ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT .....	1	CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM .....	21
INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT .....	2	CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED	
Concurrent Issuance of Debt .....	2	TO THE DISTRICT .....	25
COVID - 19 .....	2	AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES .....	25
THE BONDS .....	3	TAX RATE LIMITATIONS .....	27
Authorization and Purpose .....	3	THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT .....	29
General Description .....	3	EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-	
Optional Redemption .....	3	EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS .....	29
Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption .....	4	WEATHER EVENTS .....	29
Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices .....	4	RATINGS .....	29
Security .....	4	LEGAL MATTERS .....	30
Permanent School Fund Guarantee .....	4	TAX MATTERS .....	30
Legality .....	4	INVESTMENT POLICIES .....	32
Payment Record .....	4	REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE .....	33
Amendments .....	4	FINANCIAL ADVISOR .....	34
Defeasance .....	5	LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC	
Sources and Uses of Funds .....	5	FUNDS IN TEXAS .....	34
REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES .....	5	CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION .....	34
BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM .....	6	LITIGATION .....	35
REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE .....	7	FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS .....	35
THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM .....	8	WINNING BIDDER .....	36
STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN		CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO	
TEXAS .....	21	LITIGATION .....	36
		CONCLUDING STATEMENT .....	36
Financial Information of the District .....			Appendix A
General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy .....			Appendix B
Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel .....			Appendix C
Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2020 .....			Appendix D

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without this entire Official Statement.

<b>The District</b>	The Broaddus Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in San Augustine County, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
<b>The Bonds</b>	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$7,000,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 1, 2021, and an order (the "Order") authorizing the issuance of the Bonds to be adopted by the Board on August 12, 2021. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) design, construct, renovate, improve, upgrade, update, acquire and equip school facilities in the District, any necessary or related removal of existing facilities, and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").
<b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
<b>Security</b>	The Bonds will constitute direct and voted obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
<b>Redemption</b>	The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on August 15, 2028 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS - Optional Redemption"). If two or more serial bonds of consecutive maturities are combined into one or more "Term Bonds" by the winning bidder for the Bonds, such Term Bonds will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the provisions of the Order (see "THE BONDS – Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption").
<b>Permanent School Fund Guarantee</b>	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (defined herein), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM.")
<b>Ratings</b>	The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (as defined herein) of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A1" by Moody's. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program" and "RATING" herein.)
<b>Tax Matters</b>	In the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions on the date thereof, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. (See "TAX MATTERS" and Appendix C – "Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.")
<b>Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations</b>	The District will designate the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions").
<b>Payment Record</b>	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
<b>Legal Opinion</b>	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel.
<b>Delivery</b>	When issued, anticipated to be on or about September 9, 2021.
<b>Concurrent Issuance of Bonds by the District</b>	The Bonds are being issued concurrently with the District's issuance of \$2,000,000 (preliminary, subject to change) Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021, scheduled to close on or about September 9, 2021 (the "Series 2021 Bonds"). This Official Statement describes only the Bonds and not the Series 2021 Bonds. Investors interested in making an investment decision concerning the Series 2021A Bonds should review the offering document related thereto.

## INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Broaddus Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in San Augustine County, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021A (the "Bonds") identified on the inside cover page hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the Order (as defined below) and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained by writing the Broaddus Independent School District, One Bulldog Plaza, Broaddus, Texas 75929 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024, by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the initial purchaser of the Bonds (the "Purchaser" or "Initial Purchaser") to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access (EMMA) system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

### Concurrent Issuance of Debt

On August 12, 2021, the date the Board is expected to take action to award the Bonds to the winning bidder, the Board will also be taking action to award the sale of the District's Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2021 (the "Series 2021 Bonds"). The Series 2021 Bonds will be sold and issued separately pursuant to a separate notice of sale and offering document, but are not otherwise described in this Official Statement except as noted in this subsection and as incorporated into certain tables relating to the District's total ad valorem tax-supported indebtedness. Debt service attributable to the Series 2021 Bonds set forth in such tables assumes the actual issuance of the Series 2021 Bonds at assumed rates for illustrative purposes. Investors interested in making an investment decision concerning the Series 2021 Bonds should review the notice of sale and offering document related thereto.

### COVID-19

The outbreak of COVID-19, a respiratory disease caused by a new strain of coronavirus, has been characterized as a pandemic (the "Pandemic") by the World Health Organization and is currently affecting many parts of the world, including the United States and Texas. On January 31, 2020, the Secretary of the United States Health and Human Services Department declared a public health emergency for the United States and on March 13, 2020, the President of the United States declared the outbreak of COVID-19 in the United States a national emergency. Subsequently, the President's Coronavirus Guidelines for America and the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention called upon Americans to take actions to slow the spread of COVID-19 in the United States.

On March 13, 2020, the Governor of Texas (the "Governor") declared a state of disaster for all counties in Texas in response to the Pandemic. Pursuant to Chapter 418 of the Texas Government Code, the Governor has broad authority to respond to disasters, including suspending any regulatory statute prescribing the procedures for conducting state business or any order or rule of a state agency (including TEA) that would in any way prevent, hinder, or delay necessary action in coping with the disaster, and issuing executive orders that have the force and effect of law. The Governor has since issued a number of executive orders relating to COVID-19 preparedness, mitigation and reopening. However, on March 2, 2021, the Governor issued Executive Order GA-34 effective March 10, 2021, which supersedes most of the executive orders relating to COVID-19 and provides, generally, for the reopening of the State to 100%, ends the COVID-19 mask mandate, and supersedes any conflicting order issued by local officials in response to COVID-19, among other things and subject to certain limitations. Executive Order GA-34 remains in place until amended, rescinded, or superseded by the Governor. On May 18, 2021, Governor Abbott issued Executive Order GA-36, which supersedes Executive Order GA-34 in part. Executive Order GA-36 prohibits governmental entities in Texas, including counties, cities, school districts, public health authorities, and government officials from requiring or mandating any person to wear a face covering and subjects a governmental entity or official to a fine of up to \$1,000 for noncompliance, subject to certain exceptions. Notwithstanding the above, Executive Order GA-36 provides for public schools to continue to follow policies regarding the wearing of face coverings to the extent reflected in current guidance by TEA, until June 4, 2021. However, Executive Order GA-36 required TEA to revise its guidance such that, effective 11:59 p.m. on June 4, 2021, no student, teacher, parent, or other staff member or visitor may be required to wear a face covering. TEA has since updated its guidance in accordance with Executive Order GA-36. Executive orders remain in place until they are amended, rescinded, or superseded by the Governor. Additional information regarding executive orders issued by the Governor is accessible on the website of the Governor at <https://gov.texas.gov/>. Neither the information on (nor accessed through) such website of the Governor is incorporated by reference, either expressly or by implication, into this Official Statement.

The District continues to monitor the spread of COVID-19 and is working with local, state, and national agencies to address the potential impact of the Pandemic upon the District. While the potential impact of the Pandemic on the District cannot be fully quantified at this time, the continued outbreak of COVID-19 could have an adverse effect on the District's operations and financial condition.

The TEA advised districts that for the 2020-2021 school year district funding will return to being based on "Average Daily Attendance" (being generally calculated as the sum of student attendance for each State-mandated day of instruction divided by the number of State-mandated days of instruction, defined herein as "ADA") calculations requiring attendance to be taken. However, the TEA has crafted an approach for determining ADA during the pandemic that provides districts with several options for determining daily attendance. These include remote synchronous instruction, remote asynchronous instruction, on campus instruction, and the Texas Virtual Schools Network.

To stabilize funding expectations, districts were initially provided an ADA grace period for the first three six weeks of the 2020-2021 school year. If a district's first two six-week average ADA is less than the ADA hold harmless projections (described below), the first two six-week attendance reporting periods for 2020-2021 will be excluded from the calculation of annual ADA and student fulltime equivalents ("FTE") for Foundation School Program ("FSP") funding purposes and will be replaced with the ADA and FTE hold harmless projections that were derived using a three-year average trend of final numbers from the 2017-2018 through 2019-2020 school years, unless this projection is both (i) 15% higher and (ii) 100 ADA higher than the 2020-2021

legislative planning estimate (“LPE”) projections provided by the TEA to the State legislature pursuant to Section 48.269 of the Texas Education Code, in which case the 2020-2021 LPE ADA and FTE will be used as the hold harmless projections.

The ADA hold harmless protection was also extended for the remainder of the 2020-21 school year (the fourth, fifth, and sixth six-week attendance reporting periods). In order to qualify, a district must meet certain criteria established by the TEA related to on-campus participation rates during the sixth six-week attendance reporting period. A district would be eligible for the ADA hold harmless protection for the fourth, fifth, and sixth six-weeks if (1) the average on-campus attendance participation rate during the sixth six-weeks attendance reporting period was equal to or greater than 80% of all students educated during the sixth six-weeks; or (2) the average on-campus attendance participation rate during the sixth six-weeks attendance reporting period was equal to or greater than the on-campus attendance participation rate reported by the district on the October 2020 PEIMS Fall Snapshot. This recent extension also potentially provided ADA hold harmless protection to districts that were not previously eligible for the ADA hold harmless protection during third six-weeks attendance reporting period as previously discussed. If applicable, a district can now be eligible if (1) the average on-campus participation rate during the sixth six-weeks reporting period was equal to or greater than 90% of all students educated during the sixth six-weeks; or (2) for districts with a 2020 PEIMS Fall Snapshot on-campus attendance participation rate of less than 50%, the average on-campus attendance participation rate during the sixth six-weeks attendance reporting period must increase by at least 20 percentage points from the on-campus attendance participation rate reported on the district’s October 2020 PEIMS Fall Snapshot, or for districts with a 2020 PEIMS Fall Snapshot on-campus attendance participation rate equal to or greater than 50%, the average on-campus attendance participation rate during the sixth six-weeks reporting period must be equal to or greater than the on-campus percentage of all students educated during the sixth six-weeks that results from adding 45 percentage points to half of the on-campus attendance participation rate reported on the district’s October 2020 PEIMS Fall Snapshot.

The Pandemic has negatively affected travel, commerce, and financial markets globally, and is widely expected to continue negatively affecting economic growth and financial markets worldwide. In addition, the federal government has taken, and continues to consider additional, action without precedent in effort to counteract or mitigate the Pandemic’s economic impact. These conditions and related responses and reactions may reduce or negatively affect property values within the District. See “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES”. The Bonds are secured by an unlimited ad valorem tax, and a reduction in property values may require an increase in the ad valorem tax rate required to pay the Bonds.

Additionally, state funding of District operations and maintenance in future fiscal years could be adversely impacted by the negative effects on economic growth and financial markets resulting from the Pandemic as well as ongoing disruptions in the global oil markets (which markets provide significant revenues to the State, who in turn, use such revenues to satisfy its public school funding obligations). See “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM”.

The value of the PSF guarantee could also be adversely impacted by ongoing volatility in the diversified global markets in which the PSF is invested. See “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – Infectious Disease Outbreak.”

The financial and operating data contained in this Official Statement are as of dates and for periods stated herein. Accordingly, they are not indicative of the future prospects of the District. It is unclear at this time what effect, if any, COVID-19 and resulting economic disruption may have on future assessed values or the collection of taxes, either because of delinquencies or collection and valuation relief resulting from the declared emergency. The Bonds are secured by an unlimited ad valorem tax, and a reduction in property values may require an increase in the ad valorem tax rate required to pay the Bonds.

## **THE BONDS**

### **Authorization and Purpose**

The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$7,000,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on May 1, 2021 (the “Election”) and an order (the “Order”) authorizing the issuance of the Bonds to be adopted by the Board of Trustees (the “Board”) on August 12, 2021. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used to (i) design, construct, renovate, improve, upgrade, update, acquire and equip school facilities in the District and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities, and (ii) pay the costs of issuing the Bonds.

### **General Description**

The Bonds will be dated August 15, 2021 (the “Dated Date”) and will bear interest from the Dated Date. The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on the inside cover page of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on February 15, 2022 and on each August 15 and February 15 thereafter until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal amount or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar’s registration books at the close of business on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company New York, New York (“DTC”), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in “BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM” herein.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### **Optional Redemption**

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2029 are subject to redemption, at the option of the District, in whole or in part, in principal amounts of \$5,000 or integral multiples thereof, on August 15, 2028, or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed. Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in

whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice.

### **Mandatory Sinking Fund Redemption**

If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption as provided in the Order and as further set forth in the Official Statement.

### **Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices**

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

With respect to any optional redemption of the Bonds, unless certain prerequisites to such redemption required by the Order have been met and money sufficient to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds to be redeemed will have been received by the Paying Agent/Registrar prior to the giving of such notice of redemption, such notice may state that said redemption may, at the option of the District, be conditional upon the satisfaction of such prerequisites and receipt of such money by the Paying Agent/Registrar on or prior to the date fixed for such redemption or upon any prerequisite set forth in such notice of redemption. If a notice of conditional redemption is given and such prerequisites to the redemption are not fulfilled, such notice will be of no force and effect, the District will not redeem such Bonds, and the Paying Agent/Registrar will give notice in the manner in which the notice of redemption was given, to the effect that such Bonds have not been redeemed. Any notice of redemption so mailed shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given irrespective of whether received by the bondholder, and, subject to provision for payment of the redemption price having been made, AND ALL PRECONDITIONS STATED IN THE NOTICE OF REDEMPTION, IF ANY, HAVING BEEN SATISFIED interest on the redeemed Bonds shall cease to accrue from and after such redemption date notwithstanding that a Bond has not been presented for payment.

### **Security**

The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State and the approval of certain legal matters by McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

### **Payment Record**

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

### **Amendments**

In the Order, the District has reserved the right to amend the Order without the consent of any holder for the purpose of amending or supplementing the Order to (i) cure any ambiguity, defect or omission therein that does not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (ii) grant additional rights or security for the benefit of the holders, (iii) add events of default as shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of the Order that do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders, (iv) qualify the Order under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or corresponding provisions of federal laws from time to time in effect or (v) make such other provisions in regard to matters or questions arising under the Order that are not inconsistent with the provisions thereof and which, in the opinion of Bond Counsel for the District, do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders.

The Order further provides that the majority of owners of the Bonds shall have the right from time to time to approve any amendment not described above to the Order if it is deemed necessary or desirable by the District; provided, however, that without the consent of 100% of the holders in principal amount of the then outstanding Bonds so affected, no amendment may be made for the purpose of: (i) making any change in the maturity of any of the outstanding Bonds; (ii) reducing the rate of interest borne by any of the outstanding Bonds; (iii) reducing the amount of the principal of or redemption premium, if any, payable on any outstanding Bonds; (iv) modifying the terms of payment of principal or interest on outstanding Bonds or imposing any condition with respect to such payment; or (v) changing the minimum percentage of the principal amount of the Bonds necessary for consent to such amendment. Reference is made to the Order for further provisions relating to the amendment thereof.



**Defeasance**

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when payment of the principal amount of the Bonds plus interest accrued on the Bonds to their due date (whether such due date be by reason of stated maturity, redemption or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with a paying agent, or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money in an amount sufficient to make such payment and/or (2) Defeasance Securities, that will mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, and thereafter the District will have no further responsibility with respect to amounts available to such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) for the payment of such defeased Bonds, including any insufficiency therein caused by the failure of such paying agent (or other financial institution permitted by applicable law) to receive payment when due on the Defeasance Securities. The District has additionally reserved the right, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Defeasance Securities originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District moneys in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Order provides that "Defeasance Securities" means any securities and obligations now or hereafter authorized by State law that are eligible to discharge obligations such as the Bonds. The Pricing Officer may restrict such eligible securities and obligations as deemed appropriate. Current State law permits defeasance with the following types of securities: (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date the governing body of the District authorizes the defeasance, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that on the date the governing body of the District adopts or approves the proceedings authorizing the financial arrangements have been refunded and are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than AAA or its equivalent or (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by Texas law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Bonds. District officials may restrict such eligible securities as deemed appropriate in connection with the sale of the Bonds. There is no assurance that the current law will not be changed in a manner which would permit investments other than those described above to be made with amounts deposited to defease the Bonds. Because the Order does not contractually limit such investments, registered owners will be deemed to have consented to defeasance with such other investments, notwithstanding the fact that such investments may not be of the same investment quality as those currently permitted under State law. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities used for defeasance purposes or that for any other Defeasance Security will be maintained at any particular rating category.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded to be outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished, provided, however, the District has reserved the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Defeasance will automatically cancel the Permanent School Fund Guarantee with respect to those defeased Bonds.

**Sources and Uses of Funds**

The proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be applied approximately as follows:

<b>Sources</b>		
Par Amount of Bonds		\$
Accrued Interest		
[Net] Reoffering Premium		
<b>Total Sources of Funds</b>		\$ _____
<b>Uses</b>		
Deposit to Construction Fund		\$
Costs of Issuance		
Purchaser's Discount		
Deposit to Interest and Sinking Fund		
<b>Total Uses of Funds</b>		\$ _____

**REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES**

The Order establishes specific events of default with respect to the Bonds and provides that if the District defaults in the payment of principal or interest on the Bonds when due, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the continuation thereof for a period of 60 days after notice of default is given by the District by any registered owner, the registered owners may seek a writ of mandamus to compel District officials to carry out their legally imposed duties with respect to the Bonds, if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order covenants and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the bondholders upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Because it is unclear whether the Texas legislature has effectively waived the District's sovereign immunity from a suit for money damages, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not

specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors, by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion and by governmental immunity.

### **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Purchaser believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The District cannot and does not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC Participants, (2) DTC Participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds) or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC Participants are on file with DTC.*

DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited Securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as, redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings

shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments with respect to the Bonds to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, physical Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered to bond holders.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor securities depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered to bond holders.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, nor the Purchaser take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

#### **Successor Paying Agent/Registrar**

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

#### **Initial Registration**

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

#### **Future Registration**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

#### **Record Date For Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

#### **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

The Paying Agent/Registrar shall not be required to make any such transfer, conversion or exchange (i) during the period commencing with the close of business on any Record Date and ending with the opening of business on the next following principal or interest payment date or (ii) with respect to any Bond or any portion thereof called for redemption prior to maturity, within 45 days prior to its redemption date; provided, however, that such limitation shall not apply to uncalled portions of a Bond redeemed in part.

## Replacement Bonds

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

## THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM

*The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

### History and Purpose

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is generally authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a five member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and four citizen members appointed by the Governor. (See "2019 Texas Legislative Session" for a description of legislation that changed the composition of the SLB). As of August 31, 2020, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 15% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Texas voters of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters

of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2020 SBOE distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$347 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF by the SBOE and SLB was \$1,701.7 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2020, when filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2020 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when and as it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2020 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2020, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2020 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2020 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

### **2019 Texas Legislative Session**

During the 86th Regular Session of the Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 27, 2019 (the "86th Session"), various bills were enacted that relate to the PSF. Among such enacted legislation are bills that relate to the composition of the SLB and its relationship to the SBOE with respect to the management of the PSF. Legislation was approved that changed the composition of the SLB to a five member board from a three member board. Under that bill, the Land Commissioner will continue to head the SLB, but the remaining four members are appointed by the Governor, and of those four members, two are required to be selected from a list of nominees to be submitted to the Governor by the SBOE. That legislation also requires an annual joint meeting of the SLB and the SBOE for the purpose of discussing the allocation of the assets of the PSF and the investment of money in the PSF. Other enacted legislation requires the SLB and the SBOE to provide quarterly financial reports to each other and creates a "permanent school fund liquid account" in the PSF for the purpose of receiving funds transferred from the SLB on a quarterly basis that are not then invested by the SLB or needed within the forthcoming quarter for investment by the SBOE. Such funds shall be invested in liquid assets in the same manner that the PSF is managed until such time as the funds are required for investment by the SLB. That legislation also requires the Texas Education Agency, in consultation with the GLO, to conduct a study regarding distributions to the ASF from the PSF. In addition, a joint resolution was approved that proposed a constitutional amendment to the Texas Constitution to increase the permissible amount of distributions to the ASF from revenue derived during a year from PSF land or other properties from \$300 million to \$600 million annually by one or more entities. That constitutional change was approved by State voters at a referendum on November 5, 2019. See "2011 and 2019 Constitutional Amendments."

Other legislation enacted during the 86th Session provides for the winding up of the affairs of an open-enrollment charter school that ceases operations, including as a result of the revocation or other termination of its charter. In particular, among other provisions, the legislation addresses the disposition of real and personal property of a discontinued charter school and provides under certain circumstances for reimbursement to be made to the State, if the disposed property was acquired with State funds; authorizes the Commissioner to adopt a rule to govern related party transactions by charter schools; and creates a "charter school liquidation fund" for the management of any reclaimed State funds, including, in addition to other potential uses, for the use or deposit of such reclaimed funds to the Charter District Reserve Fund.

No assessment has been made by the TEA or PSF staff as to the potential financial impact of any legislation enacted during the 86th Session, including the increase in the permissible amount that may be transferred from the PSF to the ASF, as approved by State voters at the November 5, 2019 referendum.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009) ("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceed the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of

the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 and 2019 Constitutional Amendments" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 and November 5, 2019 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in July 2020. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. Periodic changes in the asset allocation policies have been made with the objective of providing diversity to Fund assets, and have included an alternative asset allocation in addition to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, approved in July 2020, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 37% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 14%, international large cap equities at 14%, emerging market equities at 3%, and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 6%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 25% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds, a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency, a 3% allocation for high yield bonds, and a 3% allocation for U.S. Treasury bonds), and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 38% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 15%, a real estate allocation of 11%, an absolute return allocation of 7%, a 1% allocation for private equity and real estate for emerging managers, and a real return allocation of 4%). As compared to the 2016 asset allocation, the 2020 asset allocation increased U.S. large cap equities and small/mid-cap U.S. equities by a combined 2%, added high yield bonds and U.S Treasury bonds to the fixed income allocation in the amounts noted above, increased combined private equity and real estate from 23% to 27%, eliminated the risk parity allocation, which was previously a 7% allocation within the global risk control strategy category of alternative assets, and reduced the absolute return allocation within the global risk control strategy category of alternative assets to 7% from 10%.

In accordance with legislation enacted during the 86th Session and effective September 1, 2019, the PSF has established an investment account for purposes of investing cash received from the GLO to be invested in liquid assets and managed by the SBOE in the same manner it manages the PSF. That cash has previously been included in the PSF valuation, but was held and invested by the State Comptroller. In July 2020, the SBOE adopted an asset allocation policy for the liquidity account consisting of 20% cash, 40% equities and 40% fixed income, and that asset allocation is expected to be fully implemented in the first calendar quarter of fiscal year 2022. The liquidity account equity allocation consists of U.S. large cap, U.S. small/mid cap and international large cap equities of 20%, 5% and 15%, respectively. The liquidity account fixed income allocation consists of core bonds, Treasury Inflation Protection Securities and short duration fixed income categories of 10%, 5% and 25%, respectively. At August 31, 2020, the market value of the liquidity account was \$4,050,631,451, of which 0.00% was equity investments, 39.43% was fixed income investments and 60.57% was cash.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2020 modifications, have been or will be implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2020, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 37.67% in public market equity investments; 14.39% in fixed income investments; 9.83% in absolute return assets; 13.31% in private equity assets; 8.66% in real estate assets; 3.24% in risk parity assets; 5.72% in real return assets; 6.83% in emerging market debt; and 0.35% in unallocated cash, exclusive of the liquidity account.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs within those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual pay-out from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual

distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

### **Management and Administration of the Fund**

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the SLB. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 and 2019 Constitutional Amendments" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

### **Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program**

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16,



2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds" below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017. The State Law Capacity increased from \$123,509,204,770 on August 31, 2019 to \$128,247,002,583 on August 31, 2020 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, \$117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general could be adversely affected by a number of factors, including changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, changes in State laws that implement funding decisions for school districts and charter districts, which could adversely affect the credit quality of those districts, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Final IRS Regulations will result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and as the amount of guaranteed bonds approaches the IRS Limit, it is expected that the SBOE will seek changes to the existing IRS guidance regarding the Guarantee Program with the objective of obtaining an increase in the IRS Limit. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

### **The School District Bond Guarantee Program**

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the bond or evidence



of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other Order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of March 20, 2020 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 6.15%. At January 4, 2021, there were 187 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 838 charter school campuses active under such charters (though as of such date, three of such campuses are not currently serving students for various reasons). Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment charter

school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purpose described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

From time to time, TEA has limited new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to capacity limits specified by the Act. Legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modified the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increased the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

#### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of August 31, 2020, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 77.00% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program. SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 6.15% in March 2020. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. As a result of SB 1480, the amount of charter district bonds eligible for guarantee in fiscal years 2018, 2019 and 2020 increased by the full 20% increase permitted by SB 1480, which increased the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at the Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE determined not to implement a previously approved multiplier increase to 3.75 times market value, opting to increase the multiplier to 3.50 times effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75% of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections

39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10% of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20% of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to 3.00% of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of October 31, 2020, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$43,875,326, which represented approximately 1.69% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1, 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it is held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

### **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, State funding for charter district facilities construction is limited to a program established by the Legislature in 2017, which provides \$60 million per year for eligible charter districts with an acceptable performance rating for a variety of funding purposes, including for lease or purchase payments for instructional facilities. Since State funding for charter facilities is so limited, charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF.

### **Infectious Disease Outbreak**

A respiratory disease named "2019 novel coronavirus" ("COVID-19") has recently spread to many parts of the world, including Texas and elsewhere in the U.S. On March 13, 2020, the U.S. president declared a national emergency and the Governor of Texas (the "Governor") declared COVID-19 as a statewide public health disaster (the "COVID-19 Declarations"). Subsequent actions by the Governor imposed temporary restrictions on certain businesses and ordered all schools in the State to temporarily close. This situation is rapidly developing; for additional information on these events in the State, reference is made to the website of the Governor, <https://gov.texas.gov/>, and, with respect to public school events, the website of TEA, <https://tea.texas.gov/texas-schools/safe-and-healthy-schools/coronavirus-covid-19-support-and-guidance>.

#### *Potential Impact of COVID-19 in the State and Investment Markets*

The anticipated continued spread of COVID-19, and measures taken to prevent or reduce its spread, have adversely impacted State, national and global economic activities and, accordingly, materially adversely impacted the financial condition and performance of the State. The continued spread of COVID-19, and measures taken to prevent or reduce its spread, may also adversely affect the tax bases of school districts in the State, including districts that have bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

As noted herein, the PSF investments are in diversified investment portfolios and it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which it is invested. Stock values, crude oil prices and other investment categories in the U.S.

and globally in which the Fund is invested or which provide income to the Fund, have seen significant volatility attributed to COVID-19 concerns, which could adversely affect the Fund's values.

#### TEA Continuity of Operations

Since 2007, Texas Labor Code Section 412.054 has required each State agency to develop and submit to the State Office of Risk Management an agency-level continuity of operations plan to keep the agency operational in case of disruptions to production, finance, administration or other essential operations. Such plans may be implemented during the occurrence or imminent threat of events such as extreme weather, natural disasters and infectious disease outbreaks. TEA has adopted a continuity of operations plan, which provides for, among other measures and conditions, steps to be taken to ensure performance of its essential missions and functions under such threats and conditions in the event of a pandemic event. TEA annually conducts risk assessments and risk impact analysis that include stress testing and availability analysis of system resources, including systems that enable TEA employees to work remotely, as is occurring as a result of the COVID-19 declarations. As noted above, under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program," the Guarantee Program is in significant part an intercept program whereby State funding for school districts and charter districts reimburse the Fund for any guarantee payment from the Fund for a non-performing district. In addition to the continuity of operations plan provisions noted above, the Fund maintains cash positions in its portfolios that are intended to provide liquidity to the Fund for payments under the Guarantee Program pending reimbursement of the Fund by the Comptroller. Fund management is of the view that its liquidity position, which changes from time to time in light of then current circumstances, is sufficient for payment of claims made on the Guarantee Program.

#### Impact of COVID-19 on School Districts and Charter Districts

TEA cannot predict whether any school or charter district may experience short- or longer-term cash flow emergencies as a direct or indirect effect of COVID-19 that would require a payment from the PSF to be made to a paying agent for a guaranteed bond. Most school district bonds in the State are issued as fixed rate debt, with semiannual payments in February and August. Taxes levied by school districts for payment of bonds are generally collected by the end of January in each year. Consequently, scheduled bond payments for school districts for the 2020 calendar year have generally not been affected by COVID-19. TEA has issued guidance to school districts and charter districts regarding a variety of matters pertaining to school operations in light of the on-going COVID-19 pandemic. Certain aspects of TEA's guidance include waivers pertaining to State funding provisions, local financial matters and general operations. TEA has implemented "hold harmless" funding for school districts and charter districts for the last 12 weeks of school year 2019–2020 and during the first 12 weeks of the 2020–21 school year. Additional information in this regard is available at the TEA website at <https://tea.texas.gov/texas-schools/health-safety-discipline/covid/coronavirus-covid-19-support-and-guidance>.

#### Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATING" herein.

#### Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

##### Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value <sup>(1)</sup>	Market Value <sup>(1)</sup>
2016	\$30,128,037,903	\$37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018	33,860,358,647	44,074,197,940
2019	35,288,344,219	46,464,447,981
2020 <sup>(2)</sup>	36,642,000,738	46,764,059,745

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2020, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.4 million, \$200.4 million, \$4,255.4 million, \$7.5 million, and \$333.8 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$2,115.4 million, \$628.1 million, \$3,824.2 million, \$0.9 million, and \$333.8 million, respectively. At October 31, 2020, the PSF had a book value of \$37,040,181,304 and a market value of \$46,902,584,511. October 31, 2020 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

##### Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount <sup>(1)</sup>
2016	\$68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069
2019	84,397,900,203
2020	90,336,680,245 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> As of August 31, 2020 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts and charter districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$139,992,934,246, of which \$49,656,254,001 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2020, there were \$90,336,680,245 in principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. Using the IRS Limit of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), net of the

Program's 5% reserve, as of October 31, 2020, 94.88% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 5.12% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category <sup>(1)</sup>						
School District Bonds			Charter District Bonds			Totals
Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount
2016	3,244	\$67,342,303,445	35	\$961,025,000	3,279	\$68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069
2019	3,297	82,537,755,203	49	1,860,145,000	3,346	84,397,900,203
2020 <sup>(2)</sup>	3,296	87,800,478,245	64	2,536,202,000	3,360	90,336,680,245

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> At October 31, 2020 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$91,697,104,332 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,340 school district issues, aggregating \$89,106,892,332 in principal amount and 65 charter district issues, aggregating \$2,590,212,000 in principal amount. At October 31, 2020, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$5,702,716,863 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment).

### Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2020

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2020, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management's Discussion and Analysis contained therein. Reference is made to the Annual Report, as filed with the MSRB, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) and, with respect to the liquidity account, Liquid(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2020, the Fund's land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the five-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF(SBOE) asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF(SBOE) investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2020, the Fund balance was \$46.7 billion, an increase of \$0.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested and restatements of fund balance. During the year, the SBOE updated the long-term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund, and initiated the strategic asset allocation for the Liquid(SBOE). The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2020, net of fees, were 7.50%, 7.55% and 8.19%, respectively, and the Liquid(SBOE) annual rate of return for the one year period ending August 31, 2020, net of fees, was 2.35% (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund's investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, five-year, and ten-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) externally managed real assets, net of fees and including cash, were -12.27%, 2.49%, and 5.15%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund's assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2020, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, U.S. Treasury Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2020, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$5.7 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$7.5 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2020, totaled \$2.0 billion in real estate investments and \$2.4 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2020, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.73 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns, net of fees, of 22.37%, 3.44%, 8.80%, and 15.84%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2020. The PSF(SBOE)'s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 5.50% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 4.43%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 2.93% and 4.63%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 2.41%, while real return assets yielded 3.33%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 1.67%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return, net of fees, of 7.50% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2020, under-performing the benchmark index of 8.54% by approximately 104 basis points. The Liquid(SBOE) investment in Short Term Fixed Income yielded 2.78% and Cash Reserves yielded 1.62%. Combined, Liquid(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return, net of fees, of 2.35%, out-performing the benchmark index of 2.04% by approximately 31 basis points. All PSF(SLB) externally managed investments (including cash) returned -12.27% net of fees for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2020.

For fiscal year 2020, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$2.0 billion, a decrease of \$1.7 billion from fiscal year 2019 earnings of \$3.7 billion. This decrease reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2020. In fiscal year 2020, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, decreased 5.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2020. This decrease is primarily attributable to a decrease in PSF(SLB) quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2019 and 2020, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.2 billion and \$1.1 billion, respectively. Distributions from the SLB to the ASF for fiscal years 2019 and 2020 totaled \$300 and \$600 million, respectively.

At the end of the 2020 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$90.3 billion in bonds issued by 872 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 7,789 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$202.1 billion in principal amount. During the 2020 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program totaled 3,360. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$5.9 billion or 7.0%. The State Capacity Limit increased by \$4.7 billion, or 3.8%, during fiscal year 2020 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund used to calculate that Program capacity limit. The effective capacity of the Program did not increase during fiscal year 2020 as the IRS Limit was reached in a prior fiscal year, and it is the lower of the two State and federal capacity limits for the Program.

### **2011 and 2019 Constitutional Amendment**

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a 2.974% Distribution Rate equating to \$2.2 billion for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, with the transfers to be made in equal monthly increments of \$92.2 million. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB to transfer \$10 million to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and \$45 million in fiscal year 2021. In September 2020, the SBOE approved a special, one-time transfer of \$300 million from the portion of the PSF managed by the SBOE to the Real Estate Special Fund Account of the PSF managed by the SLB, which amount is to be transferred to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2021. In approving the special transfer, the SBOE determined that the transfer was in the best interest of the PSF due to the historic nature of the public health and economic circumstances resulting from the COVID-19 pandemic and its impact on the school children of Texas. In November 2020, the SBOE approved a projected \$3.4 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2022-2023. The biennial distribution determined by the SBOE in November 2020 represents a 4.18% Distribution Rate for the 2022-2023 biennium. As in prior biennia, the direct PSF distributions to the ASF will be made in equal monthly increments. In making its determination of the 2022-2023 Distribution Rate, the SBOE took into account the announced planned distribution to the ASF by the GLO of \$875 million for the biennium.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period have been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provided authority to the GLO or another entity (described in statute as the School Land Board, Chapter 32, Natural Resources Code) that has responsibility for the management of revenues derived from land or other properties of the PSF to determine whether to transfer an amount each year to the ASF from the revenue derived during the current year from such land or properties. Prior to November 2019, the amount authorized to be transferred to the ASF from the GLO or SLB was limited to \$300 million per year. On November 5, 2019, a constitutional amendment was approved by State voters that increased the maximum transfer to the ASF to \$600 million each year from the revenue derived during that year from the PSF from the GLO or SLB, the SBOE or another entity to the extent such entity has

the responsibility for the management of revenues derived from such land or other properties. Any amount transferred to the ASF pursuant to this constitutional provision is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers. Additionally, in making its determination of the amount to distribute to the ASF, the SBOE takes into account information available to it regarding the planned annual distribution to be made to the ASF by the GLO.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2020, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the [TEA web site at http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_State\\_ment\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_State_ment_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on February 1, 2019, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c2-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

### **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

## **Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

## **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

## **Limitations and Amendments**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of Rule 15c2-12 are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

## **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

## **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.



## STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

### Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

### Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

### CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

*During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made numerous changes to the current public school finance system, the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, and the calculation of defined tax rates, including particularly those contained in House Bill 3 ("HB 3") and Senate Bill 2 ("SB 2"). In some instances, the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2 will require further interpretation in connection with their implementation in order to resolve ambiguities contained in the bills. The District is still in the process of (a) analyzing the provisions of HB 3 and SB 2, and (b) monitoring the on-going guidance provided by TEA. The information contained herein under the captions "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" is subject to change, and only reflects the District's understanding of HB 3 and SB 2 based on information available to the District as of the date of this Official Statement. Prospective investors are encouraged to review HB 3, SB 2, and the Property Tax Code for definitive requirements for the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes, the calculation of the defined tax rates, and the administration of the current public school finance system.*

### Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the public school finance system as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 43 through 49 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each school district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a maintenance and operations ("M&O") tax to pay current expenses and an interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. School districts may not increase their M&O tax rate for the purpose of creating a surplus to pay debt service on bonds. Prior to 2006, school districts were authorized to levy their M&O tax at a voter-approved rate, generally up to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. Since 2006, the State Legislature has enacted various legislation that has compressed the voter-approved M&O tax rate, as described below. Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding bonded indebtedness through the levy of an I&S tax at a rate not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable value at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, school districts generally may levy an I&S tax sufficient to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations" herein). Because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by school districts with the same I&S tax rate and M&O tax rate is also subject to wide variation; however, the public school finance funding formulas are designed to generally equalize local funding generated by a school district's M&O tax rate.

Prior to the 2019 Legislative Session, a school district's maximum M&O tax rate for a given tax year was determined by multiplying that school district's 2005 M&O tax rate levy by an amount equal a compression percentage set by legislative appropriation or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"). This compression percentage was historically set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value, since most school districts in the State had a voted maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value (though certain school districts located in Harris County had special M&O tax rate authorizations allowing a higher M&O tax rate).

rate). School districts were permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate or, with voter-approval at a valid election in the school district, up to \$0.17 above the compressed tax rate (for most school districts, this equated to an M&O tax rate between \$1.04 and \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value). School districts received additional State funds in proportion to such taxing effort.

## **2021 Regular and Special Legislative Sessions**

The Texas Legislature meets in regular session in odd-numbered years, for 140 days. The 87th Texas Legislature convened on January 12, 2021 and concluded on May 31, 2021 ("87th Regular Session"). During the 87th Regular Session, the Legislature did not make significant changes to the school finance system, State funding of school districts, nor ad valorem taxation procedures affecting school districts.

When the regular Legislature is not in session, the Governor of Texas may call one or more special sessions, at the Governor's direction, each lasting no more than 30 days, and for which the Governor sets the agenda. The Governor did order a special session which commenced on July 8, 2021 ("87th Special Session") and which must conclude within thirty days. The Governor's agenda for the 87th Special Session does not specifically address the school finance system, school operations or funding but does ask legislators to approve appropriations from additional available State general revenue for, among other purposes, property-tax relief. During the 87th Special Session, lawmakers must consider only the items denoted by the Governor on the agenda.

The District can make no representations or predictions regarding any actions the Legislature has taken or may take during the 87th Special Session concerning the substance or the effect of any legislation that previously passed or may be passed during this special session or a future session of the Legislature.

## **Local Funding for School Districts**

During the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature made several significant changes to the funding methodology for school districts (the "2019 Legislation"). The 2019 Legislation orders a school district's M&O tax rate into two distinct parts: the "Tier One Tax Rate", which is the local M&O tax rate required for a school district to receive any part of the basic level of State funding (referred to herein as "Tier One") under the Foundation School Program, as further described below, and the "Enrichment Tax Rate", which is any local M&O tax effort in excess of its Tier One Tax Rate. The 2019 Legislation amended formulas for the State Compression Percentage and Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (each as described below) to compress M&O tax rates in response to year-over-year increases in property values across the State and within a school district, respectively. The discussion in this subcaption "Local Funding For School Districts" is generally intended to describe funding provisions applicable to all school districts; however, there are distinctions in the funding formulas for school districts that generate local M&O tax revenues in excess of the school districts' funding entitlements, as further discussed under the subcaption "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Revenue Level In Excess of Entitlement" herein.

### ***State Compression Percentage***

The "State Compression Percentage" is set at 93% per \$100 of taxable value. Beginning in the State fiscal year ending in 2021, the State Compression Percentage is the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) 93% or a lower percentage set by appropriation for a school year; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the estimated total taxable property value of the State (as submitted annually to the State Legislature by the State Comptroller) has increased by at least 2.5% over the prior year; and (3) the prior year State Compression Percentage. For any year, the maximum State Compression Percentage is 93%.

### ***Maximum Compressed Tax Rate***

Pursuant to the 2019 Legislation, beginning with the State fiscal year ending in 2021 (the 2020-2021 school year) the Maximum Compressed Tax Rate (the "MCR") is the tax rate per \$100 of valuation of taxable property at which a school district must levy its Tier One Tax Rate to receive the full amount of the Tier One funding to which the school district is entitled. The MCR is equal to the lesser of three alternative calculations: (1) the school district's prior year MCR; (2) a percentage determined by formula if the school district experienced a year-over-year increase in property value of at least 2.5%; or (3) the product of the State Compression Percentage for the current year multiplied by \$1.00. However, each year the TEA shall evaluate the MCR for each school district in the State, and for any given year, if a school district's MCR is calculated to be less than 90% of any other school district's MCR for the current year, then the school district's MCR is instead equal to the school district's prior year MCR, until TEA determines that the difference between the school district's MCR and any other school district's MCR is not more than 10%. These compression formulas are intended to more closely equalize local generation of Tier One funding among districts with disparate tax bases and generally reduce the Tier One Tax Rates of school districts as property values increase.

### ***Tier One Tax Rate***

A school district's Tier One Tax Rate is defined as a school district's M&O tax rate levied that does not exceed the school district's MCR.

### ***Enrichment Tax Rate***

The Enrichment Tax Rate is the number of cents a school district levies for M&O in excess of the Tier One Tax Rate, up to an additional \$0.17. The Enrichment Tax Rate is divided into two components: (i) "Golden Pennies" which are the first \$0.08 of tax effort in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate; and (ii) "Copper Pennies" which are the next \$0.09 in excess of a school district's Tier One Tax Rate plus Golden Pennies.

School districts may levy an Enrichment Tax Rate at a level of their choice, subject to the limitations described under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate"; however to levy any of the Enrichment Tax Rate in a given year, a school district must levy a Tier One Tax Rate equal to \$0.93 for the 2019-2020 school year, or equal to the school district's MCR for the 2020-2021 and subsequent years. Additionally, a school district's levy of Copper Pennies is subject to compression if the guaranteed yield (i.e., the guaranteed level of local tax revenue and State aid generated for each cent of tax effort) of Copper Pennies is increased from one year to the next (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts – Tier Two").

## **State Funding for School Districts**

State funding for school districts is provided through the two-tiered Foundation School Program, which guarantees certain levels of funding for school districts in the State. School districts are entitled to a legislatively appropriated guaranteed yield on their Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate. When a school district's Tier One Tax Rate and Enrichment Tax Rate generate tax revenues at a level below the respective entitlement, the State will provide "Tier One" funding or "Tier Two" funding, respectively, to

fund the difference between the school district's entitlements and the calculated M&O revenues generated by the school district's respective M&O tax rates.

The first level of funding, Tier One, is the basic level of funding guaranteed to all school districts based on a school district's Tier One Tax Rate. Tier One funding may then be "enriched" with Tier Two funding. Tier Two provides a guaranteed entitlement for each cent of a school district's Enrichment Tax Rate, allowing a school district increase or decrease its Enrichment Tax Rate to supplement Tier One funding at a level of the school district's own choice. While Tier One funding may be used for the payment of debt service (except for school districts subject to the recapture provisions of Chapter 49 of the Texas Education Code, as discussed herein), and in some instances is required to be used for that purpose (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – I&S Tax Rate Limitations"), Tier Two funding may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

The current public school finance system also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,323,444,300 for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the school district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities, provided that a school district qualifies for such funding and that the State Legislature makes sufficient appropriations to fund the allotments for a State fiscal biennium. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the State Legislature.

### ***Tier One***

Tier One funding is the basic level of programmatic funding guaranteed to a school district, consisting of a State-appropriated baseline level of funding (the "Basic Allotment") for each student in "Average Daily Attendance" (being generally calculated as the sum of student attendance for each State-mandated day of instruction divided by the number of State-mandated days of instruction, defined herein as "ADA"). The Basic Allotment is revised downward if a school district's Tier One Tax Rate is less than the State-determined threshold. The Basic Allotment is supplemented by additional State funds, allotted based upon the unique school district characteristics and demographics of students in ADA, to make up most of a school district's Tier One entitlement under the Foundation School Program.

For the State fiscal year ending in 2021 and subsequent State fiscal years, the Basic Allotment for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate equal to the school district's MCR, is \$6,160 (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) for each student in ADA and is revised downward for a school district with a Tier One Tax Rate lower than the school district's MCR. The Basic Allotment is then supplemented for all school districts by various weights to account for differences among school districts and their student populations. Such additional allotments include, but are not limited to, increased funds for students in ADA who: (i) attend a qualified special education program, (ii) are diagnosed with dyslexia or a related disorder, (iii) are economically disadvantaged, or (iv) have limited English language proficiency. Additional allotments to mitigate differences among school districts include, but are not limited to: (i) a transportation allotment for mileage associated with transporting students who reside two miles or more from their home campus, (ii) a fast growth allotment (for school districts in the top 25% of enrollment growth relative to other school districts), and (iii) a college, career and military readiness allotment to further Texas' goal of increasing the number of students who attain a post-secondary education or workforce credential, and (iv) a teacher incentive allotment to increase teacher compensation retention in disadvantaged or rural school districts. A school district's total Tier One funding, divided by \$6,160, is a school district's measure of students in "Weighted Average Daily Attendance" ("WADA"), which serves to calculate Tier Two funding.

### ***Tier Two***

Tier Two supplements Tier One funding and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., Golden Pennies and Copper Pennies) depending on the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate. Golden Pennies generate a guaranteed yield equal to the greater of (i) the local revenue per student in WADA per cent of tax effort available to a school district at the ninety-sixth (96th) percentile of wealth per student in WADA, or (ii) the Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.016. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of \$98.56 per student in WADA for each Golden Penny levied. Copper Pennies generate a guaranteed yield per student in WADA equal to the school district's Basic Allotment (or a greater amount as may be provided by appropriation) multiplied by 0.008. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, school districts are guaranteed a yield of \$49.28 per student in WADA for each Copper Penny levied. For any school year in which the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA exceeds the guaranteed yield of Copper Pennies per student in WADA for the preceding school year, a school district is required to reduce its Copper Pennies levied so as to generate no more revenue per student in WADA than was available to the school district for the preceding year. Accordingly, the increase in the guaranteed yield from \$31.95 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2018-2019 school year to \$49.28 per Copper Penny per student in WADA for the 2019-2020 school year requires school districts to compress their levy of Copper Pennies by a factor of 0.64834. As such, school districts that levied an Enrichment Tax Rate of \$0.17 in school year 2018-2019 were required to reduce their Enrichment Tax Rate to approximately \$0.138 per \$100 taxable value for the 2019-2020 school year.

### ***Existing Debt Allotment, Instruction Facilities Allotment, and New Instructional Facilities Allotment***

The Foundation School Program also includes facilities funding components consisting of the IFA and the EDA, subject to legislative appropriation each State fiscal biennium. To the extent funded for a biennium, these programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a school district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of I&S tax levied to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The IFA Yield has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where new IFA awards are available, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the TEA before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA State assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a school district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the school district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a school district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. For the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium, the State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded.

State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") is the lesser of (i) \$40 per student in ADA or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which school districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The portion of a school district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first \$0.29 of its I&S tax rate (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the State Legislature). In general, a school district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the school district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the school district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A school district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the school district receives IFA funding.

Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the State Legislature for the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service payments during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium on new bonds issued by school districts in the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

A school district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to school districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. In the 2019 Legislative Session, the State Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$100,000,000 for each fiscal year of the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium for NIFA allotments.

### ***Tax Rate and Funding Equity***

The Commissioner may adjust a school district's funding entitlement if the funding formulas used to determine the school district's entitlement result in an unanticipated loss or gain for a school district. Any such adjustment requires preliminary approval from the Legislative Budget Board and the office of the Governor, and such adjustments may only be made through the 2020-2021 school year.

Additionally, the Commissioner may proportionally reduce the amount of funding a school district receives under the Foundation School Program and the ADA calculation if the school district operates on a calendar that provides less than the State-mandated minimum instruction time in a school year. The Commissioner may also adjust a school district's ADA as it relates to State funding where disaster, flood, extreme weather or other calamity has a significant effect on a school district's attendance.

Furthermore, "property-wealthy" school districts that received additional State funds under the public school finance system prior to the enactment of the 2019 Legislation are entitled to an equalized wealth transition grant on an annual basis through the 2023-2024 school year in an amount equal to the amount of additional revenue such school district would have received under former Texas Education Code Sections 41.002(e) through (g), as those sections existed on January 1, 2019. This grant is phased out through the 2023-2024 school year as follows: (1) 20% reduction for the 2020-2021 school year, (2) 40% reduction for the 2021-2022 school year, (3) 60% reduction for the 2022-2023 school year, and (4) 80% reduction for the 2023-2024 school year.

### **Local Revenue Level in Excess of Entitlement**

A school district that has sufficient property wealth to generate local revenues in excess of the school district's Tier One total state & local entitlement Tax Rate and whose Copper Pennies generate local funds in excess of the Tier II guarantee as previously discussed (a "Chapter 49 school district"), is subject to the local revenue reduction provisions contained in Chapter 49 of Texas Education Code, as amended ("Chapter 49"). Additionally, in years in which the amount of State funds appropriated specifically excludes the amount necessary to provide the guaranteed yield for Golden Pennies, local revenues generated on a school district's Golden Pennies in excess of the school district's respective funding entitlement are subject to the local revenue reduction provisions of Chapter 49. To reduce local revenue, Chapter 49 school districts are generally subject to a process known as "recapture", which requires a Chapter 49 school district to exercise certain options to remit local M&O tax revenues collected in excess of the Chapter 49 school district's funding entitlements to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or otherwise expending the respective M&O tax revenues for the benefit of students in school districts that are not Chapter 49 school districts, as described in the subcaption "Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement". Chapter 49 school districts receive their allocable share of funds distributed from the constitutionally-prescribed Available School Fund, but are generally not eligible to receive State aid under the Foundation School Program, although they may continue to receive State funds for certain competitive grants and certain programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program.

Whereas prior to the 2019 Legislation, the recapture process had been based on the proportion of a school district's assessed property value per student in ADA, recapture is now measured by the "local revenue level" (being the M&O tax revenues generated in a school district) in excess of the entitlements appropriated by the State Legislature each fiscal biennium. Therefore, school districts are now guaranteed that recapture will not reduce revenue below their statutory entitlement. The changes to the wealth transfer provisions are expected to reduce the cumulative amount of recapture payments paid by school districts by approximately \$3.6 billion during the 2020-2021 State fiscal biennium.

### ***Options for Local Revenue Levels in Excess of Entitlement***

Under Chapter 49, a school district has six options to reduce local revenues to a level that does not exceed the school district's respective entitlements: (1) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated school district; all property and debt of the consolidating school districts vest in the consolidated school district; (2) a school district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor school district; (3) a school district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a school district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor school district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor school districts; (5) a school district may execute an agreement to provide students of one or more other school districts with career and technology education through a program designated as an area program for career and technology education; or (6) a school district may consolidate by agreement with one or more school districts to form a consolidated taxing school district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 49 school district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (6) require prior approval by the Chapter 49 school district's voters.

Furthermore, a school district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective local revenue level is at or below the level that would produce its guaranteed entitlement under the Foundation School Program. If a school district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the school district's local revenue level to the level that would produce the school district's guaranteed entitlement, by detaching certain types of property from the school district and annexing the property to a property-poor school district or, if necessary, consolidate the school district with a property-poor school district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring school district's existing debt.

## CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

For the 2020-2021 school year, the District was designated as an “excess local revenue” Chapter 49 school district by TEA. Accordingly, the District has entered into a wealth equalization agreement with the Commissioner for the purchase of attendance credits for the 2020-21 school year, for the purpose of implementing permitted wealth equalization options.

A district’s “excess local revenues” must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the equalized wealth value, the District must reduce its wealth per student by the exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District’s wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted value in future school years, it will be required to exercise one or more of the permitted wealth equalization options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district’s combined property tax base, and the District’s ration of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of an annexing district.

For a detailed discussion of State funding for school districts, see “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts” herein.

### AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES

*The following is a summary of certain provisions of State law as it relates to ad valorem taxation and is not intended to be complete. Reference is made to Title I of the Texas Tax Code, as amended (the “Property Tax Code”), for identification of property subject to ad valorem taxation, property exempt or which may be exempted from ad valorem taxation if claimed, the appraisal of property for ad valorem tax purposes, and the procedures and limitations applicable to the levy and collection of ad valorem taxes.*

#### Valuation of Taxable Property

The Property Tax Code provides for countywide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board (the “Appraisal Review Board”) responsible for appraising property for all taxing units within the county. The appraisal of property within the District is the responsibility of the San Augustine County Appraisal District (the “Appraisal District”). Except as generally described below, the Appraisal District is required to appraise all property within the Appraisal District on the basis of 100% of its market value and is prohibited from applying any assessment ratios. In determining market value of property, the Appraisal District is required to consider the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and use the method the chief appraiser of the Appraisal District considers most appropriate. The Property Tax Code requires appraisal districts to reappraise all property in its jurisdiction at least once every three (3) years. A taxing unit may require annual review at its own expense, and is entitled to challenge the determination of appraised value of property within the taxing unit by petition filed with the Appraisal Review Board.

State law requires the appraised value of an owner’s principal residence (“homestead” or “homesteads”) to be based solely on the property’s value as a homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a homestead to the lesser of (1) the market value of the property or (2) 110% of the appraised value of the property for the preceding tax year plus the market value of all new improvements to the property.

State law provides that eligible owners of both agricultural land and open-space land, including open-space land devoted to farm or ranch purposes or open-space land devoted to timber production, may elect to have such property appraised for property taxation on the basis of its productive capacity. The same land may not be qualified as both agricultural and open-space land.

The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District are subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board. The appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by taxing units, such as the District, in establishing their tax rolls and tax rates (see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – District and Taxpayer Remedies”).

#### State Mandated Homestead Exemptions

State law grants, with respect to each school district in the State, (1) a \$25,000 exemption of the appraised value of all homesteads, (2) a \$10,000 exemption of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled, and (3) various exemptions for disabled veterans and their families, surviving spouses of members of the armed services killed in action and surviving spouses of first responders killed or fatally wounded in the line of duty. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation attributable to state-mandated homestead exemptions.

#### Local Option Homestead Exemptions

The governing body of a taxing unit, including a city, county, school district, or special district, at its option may grant: (1) an exemption of up to 20% of the appraised value of all homesteads (but not less than \$5,000) and (2) an additional exemption of at least \$3,000 of the appraised value of the homesteads of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older and the disabled. Each taxing unit decides if it will offer the local option homestead exemptions and at what percentage or dollar amount, as applicable. The governing body of a school district may not repeal or reduce the amount of the local option homestead exemption described in (1), above. The exemption described in (2), above, may also be created, increased, decreased or repealed at an election called by the governing body of a taxing unit upon presentment of a petition for such creation, increase, decrease, or repeal of at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the taxing unit. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation, if any, attributable to local option homestead exemptions.

#### State Mandated Freeze on School District Taxes

Except for increases attributable to certain improvements, a school district is prohibited from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the homestead of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such homestead qualified for such exemption. This freeze is transferable to a different homestead if a qualifying taxpayer moves and, under certain circumstances, is also transferable to the surviving spouse of persons sixty-five (65) years of age or older, but not the disabled. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation attributable to the freeze on taxes for the elderly and disabled.

## **Personal Property**

Tangible personal property (furniture, machinery, supplies, inventories, etc.) used in the “production of income” is taxed based on the property’s market value. Taxable personal property includes income-producing equipment and inventory. Intangibles such as goodwill, accounts receivable, and proprietary processes are not taxable. Tangible personal property not held or used for production of income, such as household goods, automobiles or light trucks, and boats, is exempt from ad valorem taxation unless the governing body of a taxing unit elects to tax such property.

## **Freeport and Goods-In-Transit Exemptions**

Certain goods that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded outside the State, and are detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication (“Freeport Property”) are exempt from ad valorem taxation unless a taxing unit took official action to tax Freeport Property before April 1, 1990 and has not subsequently taken official action to exempt Freeport Property. Decisions to continue taxing Freeport Property may be reversed in the future; decisions to exempt Freeport Property are not subject to reversal.

Certain goods, that are acquired in or imported into the State to be forwarded to another location within or without the State, stored in a location that is not owned by the owner of the goods and are transported to another location within or without the State within 175 days (“Goods-in-Transit”), are generally exempt from ad valorem taxation; however, the Property Tax Code permits a taxing unit, on a local option basis, to tax Goods-in-Transit if the taxing unit takes official action, after conducting a public hearing, before January 1 of the first tax year in which the taxing unit proposes to tax Goods-in-Transit. Goods-in-Transit and Freeport Property do not include oil, natural gas or petroleum products, and Goods-in-Transit does not include aircraft or special inventories such as manufactured housing inventory, or a dealer’s motor vehicle, boat, or heavy equipment inventory.

A taxpayer may receive only one of the Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions for items of personal property. See “Appendix A – Financial Information of the District – Assessed Valuation” for the reduction in taxable valuation, if any, attributable to Goods-in-Transit or Freeport Property exemptions.

## **Other Exempt Property**

Other major categories of exempt property include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if used for public purposes, property exempt by federal law, property used for pollution control, farm products owned by producers, property of nonprofit corporations used for scientific research or educational activities benefitting a college or university, designated historic sites, solar and wind-powered energy devices, and certain classes of intangible personal property.

## **Temporary Exemption for Qualified Property Damaged by a Disaster**

The Property Tax Code entitles the owner of certain qualified (i) tangible personal property used for the production of income, (ii) improvements to real property, and (iii) manufactured homes located in an area declared by the governor to be a disaster area following a disaster and is at least 15 percent damaged by the disaster, as determined by the chief appraiser, to an exemption from taxation of a portion of the appraised value of the property. The amount of the exemption ranges from 15 percent to 100 percent based upon the damage assessment rating assigned by the chief appraiser. Except in situations where the territory is declared a disaster on or after the date the taxing unit adopts a tax rate for the year in which the disaster declaration is issued, the governing body of the taxing unit is not required to take any action in order for the taxpayer to be eligible for the exemption. If a taxpayer qualifies for the exemption after the beginning of the tax year, the amount of the exemption is prorated based on the number of days left in the tax year following the day on which the governor declares the area to be a disaster area. For more information on the exemption, reference is made to Section 11.35 of the Tax Code. Section 11.35 of the Tax Code was enacted during the 2019 legislative session, and there is no judicial precedent for how the statute will be applied. Texas Attorney General Opinion KP-0299, issued on April 13, 2020, concluded a court would likely find the Texas Legislature intended to limit the temporary tax exemption to apply to property physically harmed as a result of a declared disaster.

## **Tax Increment Reinvestment Zones**

A city or county, by petition of the landowners or by action of its governing body, may create one or more tax increment reinvestment zones (“TIRZ”) within its boundaries. At the time of the creation of the TIRZ, a “base value” for the real property in the TIRZ is established and the difference between any increase in the assessed valuation of taxable real property in the TIRZ in excess of the base value is known as the “tax increment”. During the existence of the TIRZ, all or a portion of the taxes levied against the tax increment by a city or county, and all other overlapping taxing units that elected to participate, are restricted to paying only planned project and financing costs within the TIRZ and are not available for the payment of other obligations of such taxing units.

Until September 1, 1999, school districts were able to reduce the value of taxable property reported to the State to reflect any taxable value lost due to TIRZ participation by the school district. The ability of the school district to deduct the taxable value of the tax increment that it contributed prevented the school district from being negatively affected in terms of state school funding. However, due to a change in law, local M&O tax rate revenue contributed to a TIRZ created on or after May 31, 1999 will count toward a school district’s Tier One entitlement (reducing Tier One State funds for eligible school districts) and will not be considered in calculating any school district’s Tier Two entitlement (see “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts”).

## **Tax Limitation Agreements**

The Texas Economic Development Act (Chapter 313, Texas Tax Code, as amended), allows school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the school district. Generally, during the last eight (8) years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, a school district may only levy and collect M&O taxes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. For the purposes of calculating its Tier One and Tier Two entitlements, the portion of a school district’s property that is not fully taxable is excluded from the school district’s taxable property values. Therefore, a school district will not be subject to a reduction in Tier One or Tier Two State funds as a result of lost M&O tax revenues due to entering into a tax limitation agreement (see “CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – State Funding for School Districts”). The 87<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature did not vote to extend this program, which now is scheduled to expire by its terms, effective December 31, 2022.

For a discussion of how the various exemptions described above are applied by the District, see “AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – The Property Tax Code as Applied to the District” herein.

## **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal the determinations of the Appraisal District by timely initiating a protest with the Appraisal Review Board. Additionally, taxing units such as the District may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Property Tax Code.

Owners of certain property with a taxable value in excess of the current year "minimum eligibility amount", as determined by the State Comptroller, and situated in a county with a population of one million or more, may protest the determinations of an appraisal district directly to a three-member special panel of the appraisal review board, appointed by the chairman of the appraisal review board, consisting of highly qualified professionals in the field of property tax appraisal. The minimum eligibility amount is set at \$50 million for the 2020 tax year, and is adjusted annually by the State Comptroller to reflect the inflation rate.

The Property Tax Code sets forth notice and hearing procedures for certain tax rate increases by the District and provides for taxpayer referenda that could result in the repeal of certain tax increases (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate"). The Property Tax Code also establishes a procedure for providing notice to property owners of reappraisals reflecting increased property value, appraisals which are higher than renditions, and appraisals of property not previously on an appraisal roll.

## **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty of six percent (6%) of the amount of the tax for the first calendar month it is delinquent, plus one percent (1%) for each additional month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid prior to July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent. If the tax is not paid by July 1 of the year in which it becomes delinquent, the tax incurs a total penalty of twelve percent (12%) regardless of the number of months the tax has been delinquent and incurs an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) if imposed by the District. The delinquent tax also accrues interest at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month it remains unpaid. The Property Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes for certain taxpayers. Furthermore, the District may provide, on a local option basis, for the split payment, partial payment, and discounts for early payment of taxes under certain circumstances. The Property Tax Code permits taxpayers owning homes or certain businesses located in a disaster area and damaged as a direct result of the declared disaster to pay taxes imposed in the year following the disaster in four equal installments without penalty or interest, commencing on February 1 and ending on August 1. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Temporary Exemption for Qualified Property Damaged by a Disaster" for further information related to a discussion of the applicability of this section of the Property Tax Code.

## **District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies**

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all state and local taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The lien exists in favor of each taxing unit, including the District, having power to tax the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with tax liens of such other taxing units. A tax lien on real property takes priority over the claim of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien; however, whether a lien of the United States is on a parity with or takes priority over a tax lien of the District is determined by applicable federal law. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

At any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property.

Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, adverse market conditions, taxpayer redemption rights, or bankruptcy proceedings which restrain the collection of a taxpayer's debt.

Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases, post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

## **TAX RATE LIMITATIONS**

### **M&O Tax Rate Limitations**

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the succeeding paragraphs. The District believes that its maintenance and operations tax was voted not earlier than 1949, pursuant to Texas Revised Civil Statutes Annotated Article 2784e-1, as amended ("Article 2784e-1"), at a rate not to exceed \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, but cannot find any record thereof because they have been destroyed or irretrievably lost. Past District officials executed sworn affidavits to this effect. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the District issued its "Maintenance Tax Refunding Bonds, Series 2011" on December 8, 2011.

HB3 established the following maximum M&O tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by independent school districts, such as the District, for the 2019 and subsequent tax years:

The maximum maintenance tax rate per \$100 of taxable value that may be adopted by an independent school district is the sum of \$0.17 and the school district's MCR. The District's MCR is, generally, inversely proportional to the change in taxable property values both within the District and the State, and is subject to recalculation annually. For any year, highest possible MCR for an independent school district is \$0.93.

Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate without submitting such tax rate to an election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS – Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate" herein.

## **I&S Tax Rate Limitations**

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security").

Section 45.0031 of the Texas Education Code, as amended, requires a school district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by voters of a school district at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued (the "50-cent Test"). In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a school district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the school district, which effectively reduces the school district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the school district. If a school district exercises this option, it may not adopt an I&S tax until it has credited to the school district's I&S fund an amount equal to all State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service and any Tier One funds needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Additionally, a school district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the 50-cent Test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the school district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five (5) years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a school district uses projected future taxable values to meet the 50-cent Test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the school district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the 50-cent Test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a school district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. The Bonds are issued as "new money bonds" and are subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. The District has not utilized projected property values or State assistance to satisfy the \$0.50 test.

## **Public Hearing and Voter-Approval Tax Rate**

A school district's total tax rate is the combination of the M&O tax rate and the I&S tax rate. Generally, the highest rate at which a school district may levy taxes for any given year without holding an election to approve the tax rate is the "Voter-Approval Tax Rate", as described below.

A school district is required to adopt its annual tax rate before the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, except that a tax rate that exceeds the Voter-Approval Tax Rate must be adopted not later than the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date. A school district's failure to adopt a tax rate equal to or less than the Voter-Approval Tax Rate by September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll, will result in the tax rate for such school district for the tax year to be the lower of the "no-new-revenue tax rate" calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the school district for the preceding tax year. A school district's failure to adopt a tax rate in excess of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate on or prior to the seventy-first (71st) day before the next occurring November uniform election date, will result in the school district adopting a tax rate equal to or less than its Voter-Approval Tax Rate by the later of September 30 or the sixtieth (60th) day after receipt of the certified appraisal roll. "No-new-revenue tax rate" means the rate that will produce the prior year's total tax levy from the current year's total taxable values, adjusted such that lost values are not included in the calculation of the prior year's taxable values and new values are not included in the current year's taxable values.

The Voter-Approval Tax Rate for a school district is the sum of (i) the school district's MCR; (ii) the greater of (a) the school district's Enrichment Tax Rate for the preceding year, less any amount by which the school district is required to reduce its current year Enrichment Tax Rate pursuant to Section 48.202(f), Education Code, as amended, or (b) the rate of \$0.05 per \$100 of taxable value; and (iii) the school district's current I&S tax rate. However, for only the 2020 tax year, if the governing body of the school district does not adopt by unanimous vote an M&O tax rate at least equal to the sum of the school district's MCR plus \$0.05, then \$0.04 is substituted for \$0.05 in the calculation for such school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate for the 2020 tax year. For the 2020 tax year, and subsequent years, a school district's M&O tax rate may not exceed the rate equal to the sum of (i) \$0.17 and (ii) the school district's MCR (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" herein, for more information regarding the State Compression Percentage, MCR, and the Enrichment Tax Rate).

The governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate without approval by a majority of the voters approving the higher rate at an election to be held on the next uniform election date.

Further, subject to certain exceptions for areas declared disaster areas, State law requires the board of trustees of a school district to conduct an efficiency audit before seeking voter approval to adopt a tax rate exceeding the Voter-Approval Tax Rate and sets certain parameters for conducting and disclosing the results of such efficiency audit. An election is not required for a tax increase to address increased expenditures resulting from certain natural disasters in the year following the year in which such disaster occurs; however, the amount by which the increased tax rate exceeds the school district's Voter-Approval Tax Rate for such year may not be considered by the school district in the calculation of its subsequent Voter-Approval Tax Rate.

The calculation of the Voter-Approval Tax Rate does not limit or impact the District's ability to set an I&S tax rate in each year sufficient to pay debt service on all of the District's tax-supported debt obligations, including the Bonds.

Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss the school district's budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the school district if the school district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c), (c-1), (c-2), and (d), and, if applicable, subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the school district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A school district that elects to adopt a tax rate before the adoption of a budget for the fiscal year that begins in the current tax year may adopt a tax rate for the current tax year before receipt of the certified appraisal roll, so long as the chief appraiser of the appraisal district in which the school district participates has certified to the assessor for the school district an estimate of the taxable value of property in the school district. If a school district adopts its tax rate prior to the adoption of its budget, both the no-new-revenue tax rate and the Voter-Approval Tax Rate of the school district shall be calculated based on the school district's certified estimate of taxable value. A school



district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

A school district must annually calculate and prominently post on its internet website, and submit to the county tax assessor-collector for each county in which all or part of the school district is located its Voter-Approval Tax Rate in accordance with forms prescribed by the State Comptroller.

### **THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT**

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in San Augustine County. The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within San Augustine County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District collects an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by the San Augustine County Appraisal District.

The District does not allow split payments and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District has not granted any tax abatements.

The District does not grant a portion of the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has not granted the freeport exemption. The District has not taken action to tax goods-in-transit.

### **EMPLOYEES' RETIREMENT PLAN AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District contributes to the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (the "System"), a public employee retirement system. It is a cost-sharing, multiple-employer defined benefit pension plan with one exception: all risks and costs are not shared by the District, but are the liability of the State of Texas. The System provides service retirement and disability retirement benefits, and death benefits to plan members and beneficiaries. The System operates primarily under the provisions of the Texas Constitution and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. See "Notes to the Financial Statements – Note 9 – Pension Plan" as set out in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2021 as set forth in APPENDIX D hereto.

The District contributes to the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program ("TRS-Care"), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan administered by the System. TRS-Care provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retired under the System. See "Notes to the Financial Statements, Note 10 – Defined Other Post-Employment Benefit Plans" in the audited financial statements of the District for the year ended August 31, 2021 as set forth in APPENDIX D hereto.

In June 2012, the Government Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") issued Statement No. 68 Accounting and Financial Reporting for Pensions, which was later amended by GASB Statement No. 71 Pension Transition for Contributions Made Subsequent to the Measurement Date, each in an effort to improve accounting and financial reporting by state and local governments related to pensions. GASB Statement No. 68 requires reporting entities, such as the District, to recognize their proportionate share of the net pension liability and operating statement activity related to changes in collective pension liability. Reporting entities, such as the District, that contribute to the TRS pension plan will report a liability on the face of their government-wide financial statements. Such reporting began with the District's fiscal year ending August 31, 2015.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

### **WEATHER EVENTS**

The District is in the vicinity of the Texas Gulf Coast. Land located in this area is susceptible to high winds, heavy rain and flooding caused by hurricanes, tropical storms, and other tropical disturbances. The District's area previously experienced multiple storms and future adverse weather events could result in damages to District facilities or damages to residential and commercial properties in the District that comprise the District's ad valorem tax base. If a weather event significantly damaged all or part of the properties comprising the tax base within the District, the assessed value of property within the District could be substantially reduced, which could result in a decrease in tax revenues and/or necessitate an increase the District's tax rate. There can be no assurance that a casualty loss to taxable property within the District will be covered by insurance (or that property owners will even carry flood or other casualty insurance), that any insurance company will fulfill its obligation to provide insurance proceeds, or that insurance proceeds will be used to rebuild or repair any damaged improvements within the District's boundaries or be sufficient for such purposes. Even if insurance proceeds are available and improvements are rebuilt, there could be a lengthy period in which assessed values within the District could be adversely affected.

### **RATINGS**

The Bonds are rated "Aaa" by Moody's Investors Service, Inc. ("Moody's") based upon the Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein). The District's underlying, unenhanced rating, including the Bonds, is "A1" by Moody's. A securities rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time.

An explanation of the significance of such ratings may be obtained from the company furnishing the ratings. The ratings reflect only the view of such organization and the District makes no representation as to the appropriateness of any rating. There is no assurance that any rating will continue for any given period of time one or both of such ratings will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by the rating company, if in the judgment of such company the circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of one or more ratings, may have an adverse effect on the market price or marketability of the Bonds.

## LEGAL MATTERS

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas, who will deliver its opinion, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C.

Bond Counsel represents the Financial Advisor and purchasers of school district bonds from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, but Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in the issuance of the Bonds. McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P. also advises the TEA in connection with its disclosure obligations under the federal securities laws, but such firm has not passed upon any TEA disclosures contained in this Official Statement. Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part, in the preparation of the Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein, except that, in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information describing the Bonds in the Official Statement to verify that such description conforms to the provisions of the Order. The District intends to pay the legal fee of Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds from the proceeds of the Bonds.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## TAX MATTERS

### Opinion

On the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, McCall, Parkhurst & Horton L.L.P., San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel to the District, will render its opinion that, in accordance with statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date thereof ("Existing Law"), (1) interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes will be excludable from the "gross income" of the holders thereof and (2) the Bonds will not be treated as "specified private activity bonds" the interest on which would be included as an alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the "Code")

Except as stated above, Bond Counsel will express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. See Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.

In rendering its opinion, Bond Counsel will rely upon (a) certain information and representations of the District, including information and representations contained in the District's federal tax certificate, (b) covenants of the District contained in the Bond documents relating to certain matters, including arbitrage and the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the property financed therewith, and (c) the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund. Failure by the District to observe the aforementioned representations or covenants could cause the interest on the Bonds to become taxable retroactively to the date of issuance.

The Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder contain a number of requirements that must be satisfied subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds in order for interest on the Bonds to be, and to remain, excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Failure to comply with such requirements may cause interest on the Bonds to be included in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds. The opinion of Bond Counsel is conditioned on compliance by the District with such requirements, and Bond Counsel has not been retained to monitor compliance with these requirements subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds.

Bond Counsel's opinion represents its legal judgment based upon its review of Existing Law and the reliance on the aforementioned information, representations and covenants. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result. Existing Law is subject to change by the Congress and to subsequent judicial and administrative interpretation by the courts and the Department of the Treasury. There can be no assurance that Existing Law or the interpretation thereof will not be changed in a manner which would adversely affect the tax treatment of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds.

A ruling was not sought from the Internal Revenue Service by the District with respect to the Bonds or the facilities financed with the proceeds of the Bonds. Bond Counsel's opinion represents its legal judgment based upon its review of Existing Law and the representations of the Issuer that it deems relevant to render such opinion and is not a guarantee of a result. No assurances can be given as to whether the Internal Revenue Service will commence an audit of the Bonds, or as to whether the Internal Revenue Service would agree with the opinion of Bond Counsel. If an Internal Revenue Service audit is commenced, under current procedures the Internal Revenue Service is likely to treat the District as the taxpayer and the Bondholders may have no right to participate in such procedure. No additional interest will be paid upon any determination of taxability.

### Federal Income Tax Accounting Treatment of Original Issue Discount

The initial public offering price to be paid for one or more maturities of the Bonds may be less than the maturity amount thereof or one or more periods for the payment of interest on the Bonds may not be equal to the accrual period or be in excess of one year (the "Original Issue Discount Bonds"). In such event, the difference between (i) the "stated redemption price at maturity" of each Original Issue Discount Bond, and (ii) the initial offering price to the public of such Original Issue Discount Bond would constitute original issue discount. The "stated redemption price at maturity" means the sum of all payments to be made on the Bonds less the amount of all periodic interest payments. Periodic interest payments are payments which are made during equal accrual periods (or during any unequal period if it is the initial or final period) and which are made during accrual periods which do not exceed one year.

Under Existing Law, any owner who has purchased such Original Issue Discount Bond in the initial public offering is entitled to exclude from gross income (as defined in section 61 of the Code) an amount of income with respect to such Original Issue

Discount Bond equal to that portion of the amount of such original issue discount allocable to the accrual period. For a discussion of certain collateral federal tax consequences, see the discussion set forth below.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bond prior to stated maturity, however, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Original Issue Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Original Issue Discount Bond was held by such initial owner) is includable in gross income.

Under Existing Law, the original issue discount on each Original Issue Discount Bond is accrued daily to the stated maturity thereof (in amounts calculated as described below for each six-month period ending on the date before the semiannual anniversary dates of the date of the Bonds and ratably within each such six-month period) and the accrued amount is added to an initial owner's basis for such Original Issue Discount Bond for purposes of determining the amount of gain or loss recognized by such owner upon the redemption, sale or other disposition thereof. The amount to be added to basis for each accrual period is equal to (a) the sum of the issue price and the amount of original issue discount accrued in prior periods multiplied by the yield to stated maturity (determined on the basis of compounding at the close of each accrual period and properly adjusted for the length of the accrual period) less (b) the amounts payable as current interest during such accrual period on such Original Issue Discount Bond.

The federal income tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of Original Issue Discount Bonds which are not purchased in the initial offering at the initial offering price may be determined according to rules which differ from those described above. All owners of Original Issue Discount Bonds should consult their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal, state and local income tax purposes of the treatment of interest accrued upon redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds and with respect to the federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences of the purchase, ownership, redemption, sale or other disposition of such Original Issue Discount Bonds.

### **Collateral Federal Income Tax Consequences**

The following discussion is a summary of certain collateral federal income tax consequences resulting from the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds. This discussion is based on Existing Law, all of which is subject to change or modification, retroactively.

The following discussion is applicable to investors, other than those who are subject to special provisions of the Code, such as financial institutions, property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals allowed an earned income credit, certain S corporations with Subchapter C earnings and profits, foreign corporations subject to the branch profits tax, taxpayers qualifying for the health insurance premium assistance credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase tax-exempt obligations.

THE DISCUSSION CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE EXHAUSTIVE. INVESTORS, INCLUDING THOSE WHO ARE SUBJECT TO SPECIAL PROVISIONS OF THE CODE, SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TAX ADVISORS AS TO THE TAX TREATMENT WHICH MAY BE ANTICIPATED TO RESULT FROM THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS BEFORE DETERMINING WHETHER TO PURCHASE THE BONDS.

Under section 6012 of the Code, holders of tax-exempt obligations, such as the Bonds, may be required to disclose interest received or accrued during each taxable year on their returns of federal income taxation.

Section 1276 of the Code provides for ordinary income tax treatment of gain recognized upon the disposition of a tax-exempt obligation, such as the Bonds, if such obligation was acquired at a "market discount" and if the fixed maturity of such obligation is equal to, or exceeds, one year from the date of issue. Such treatment applies to "market discount bonds" to the extent such gain does not exceed the accrued market discount of such bonds; although for this purpose, a de minimis amount of market discount is ignored. A "market discount bond" is one which is acquired by the holder at a purchase price which is less than the stated redemption price at maturity or, in the case of a bond issued at an original issue discount, the "revised issue price" (i.e., the issue price plus accrued original issue discount). The "accrued market discount" is the amount which bears the same ratio to the market discount as the number of days during which the holder holds the obligation bears to the number of days between the acquisition date and the final maturity date.

### **Future and Proposed Legislation**

Tax legislation, administrative actions taken by tax authorities, or court decisions, whether at the Federal or state level, may adversely affect the tax-exempt status of interest on the Bonds under Federal or state law and could affect the market price or marketability of the Bonds. Any such proposal could limit the value of certain deductions and exclusions, including the exclusion for tax-exempt interest. The likelihood of any such proposal being enacted cannot be predicted. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult their own tax advisors regarding the foregoing matters.

### **Information Reporting and Backup Withholding**

Subject to certain exceptions, information reports describing interest income, including original issue discount, with respect to the Bonds will be sent to each registered holder and to the IRS. Payments of interest and principal may be subject to backup withholding under section 3406 of the Code if a recipient of the payments fails to furnish to the payor such owner's social security number or other taxpayer identification number ("TIN"), furnishes an incorrect TIN, or otherwise fails to establish an exemption from the backup withholding tax. Any amounts so withheld would be allowed as a credit against the recipient's federal income tax. Special rules apply to partnerships, estates and trusts, and in certain circumstances, and in respect of Non-U.S. Holders, certifications as to foreign status and other matters may be required to be provided by partners and beneficiaries thereof.

### **State, Local and Foreign Taxes**

Investors should consult their own tax advisors concerning the tax implications of the purchase, ownership or disposition of the Bonds under applicable state or local laws. Foreign investors should also consult their own tax advisors regarding the tax consequences unique to investors who are not United States persons.

### **Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations for Financial Institutions**

Section 265(a) of the Code provides, in pertinent part, that interest paid or incurred by a taxpayer, including a "financial institution," on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase or carry tax-exempt obligations is not deductible in determining the taxpayer's taxable income. Section 265(b) of the Code provides an exception to the disallowance of such deduction for any interest expense paid or incurred on indebtedness of a taxpayer that is a "financial institution" allocable to tax-exempt

obligations, other than "private activity bonds," that are designated by a "qualified small issuer" as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." A "qualified small issuer" is any governmental issuer (together with any "on behalf of" and "subordinate" issuers) who issues no more than \$10,000,000 of tax-exempt obligations during the calendar year. Section 265(b)(5) of the Code defines the term "financial institution" as any "bank" described in section 585(a)(2) of the Code, or any person accepting deposits from the public in the ordinary course of such person's trade or business that is subject to federal or state supervision as a financial institution. Notwithstanding the exception to the disallowance of the deduction of interest on indebtedness related to "qualified tax-exempt obligations" provided by section 265(b) of the Code, section 291 of the Code provides that the allowable deduction to a "bank," as defined in section 585(a)(2) of the Code, for interest on indebtedness incurred or continued to purchase "qualified tax-exempt obligations" shall be reduced by twenty-percent (20%) as a "financial institution preference item."

The District expects to designate the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" within the meaning of section 265(b) of the Code. In furtherance of that designation, the District will covenant to take such action that would assure, or to refrain from such action that would adversely affect, the treatment of the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." **Potential purchasers should be aware that if the issue price to the public exceeds \$10,000,000, there is a reasonable basis to conclude that the payment of a de minimis amount of premium in excess of \$10,000,000 is disregarded; however, the Internal Revenue Service could take a contrary view. If the Internal Revenue Service takes the position that the amount of such premium is not disregarded, then such obligations might fail to satisfy the aforementioned dollar limitation and the Bonds would not be "qualified tax-exempt obligations."**

## INVESTMENT POLICIES

### Investments

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.

### Legal Investments

Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, including the Federal Home Loan Banks, (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities, (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, (4) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, including obligations that are fully guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or by the explicit full faith and credit of the United States, (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent, (6) bonds issued, assumed, or guaranteed by the State of Israel, (7) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, or its successor, or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successor, (8) interest-bearing banking deposits other than those described by clause (7) if (A) the funds invested in the banking deposits are invested through: (i) a broker with a main office or branch office in this state that the investing entity selects from a list the governing body or designated investment committee of the entity adopts as required by Section 2256.025, Texas Government Code; or (ii) a depository institution with a main office or branch office in this state that the investing entity selects; (B) the broker or depository institution selected as described by (A) above arranges for the deposit of the funds in the banking deposits in one or more federally insured depository institutions, regardless of where located, for the investing entity's account; (C) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of the banking deposits is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; and (D) the investing entity appoints as the entity's custodian of the banking deposits issued for the entity's account: (i) the depository institution selected as described by (A) above; (ii) an entity described by Section 2257.041(d), Texas Government Code; or (iii) a clearing broker dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission and operating under Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3, (9) certificates of deposit and share certificates (i) that are issued by an institution that has its main office or a branch office in Texas and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) or in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits; or (ii) where: (a) the funds are invested by the District through (I) a broker that has its main office or a branch office in the State and is selected from a list adopted by the District as required by law or (II) a depository institution that has a main office or branch office in the State and that is selected by the District; (b) the broker of depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of funds in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; (d) the District appoints the depository institution selected under (a) above, an entity described by Section 2257.041(d) of the Texas Government Code, or a clearing broker-dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission and operating pursuant to Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c3-3 as custodian for the investing entity with respect to the certificates of deposit, (10) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are fully secured by obligations described in clause (1) and require the security being purchased by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State, (11) certain bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency, (12) commercial paper with the remaining term of 365 days or less from the date of issuance that is rated at least "A-1" or "P-1" or the equivalent by at least (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank, (13) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission provides the investing entity with a prospectus and other information required by the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 or the Investment Company Act of 1940 and complies with federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7, and (14) no-load mutual funds registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission that have an average weighted maturity of less than two years, and have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph or have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities. In addition, bond proceeds may be invested in guaranteed investment contracts that have a defined termination date and are secured by obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities in an amount at least equal to the amount of the bond proceeds invested under such contract, other than the prohibited obligations described in the succeeding paragraph.

Entities such as the District may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized, including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time, and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described by clauses (1) through (8) above, (b) irrevocable letters of credit issued by a bank that is organized and existing under the laws of the United States or any other state and is continuously rated by at least one nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash

invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) and (12) through (14) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or a third party designated by the District; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer, as defined by 5 C.F.R. Section 6801.102(f), as that regulation existed on September 1, 2003, or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District may invest in such obligations directly or through government investment pools that invest solely in such obligations provided that the pools are rated no lower than "AAA" or "AAAm" or an equivalent by at least one nationally recognized rating service.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

### **Investment Policies**

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

State law also requires that District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board.

### **Additional Provisions**

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

### **Current Investments**

As of December 28, 2021, the District had approximately \$440,638 (unaudited) invested in certificates of deposit. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities; i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

### **REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District has agreed to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

#### **FINANCIAL ADVISOR**

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. (the "Financial Advisor") is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of their limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

#### **LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS**

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATING" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

#### **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION**

The District is exempt from certain of the continuing disclosure obligations set forth in the United States Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), pursuant to the exemption under subsection (d)(2), which applies to certain small issuers such as the District who are not an "obligated person" (as defined in the Rule) responsible for the repayment of municipal securities outstanding (including the Bonds) in an aggregate principal amount exceeding \$10,000,000. This exception allows the District to not file annual updates to all financial and operating data that is included in this Official Statement.

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to provide certain updated financial information and operating data annually, and timely notice of specified events, to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). For a description of the continuing disclosure obligations of the TEA, see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the Electronic Municipal Markets Access ("EMMA") system at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

#### **Annual Reports**

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in APPENDIX D to this official statement, which is customarily prepared by the District and publicly available. The District will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year ending in and after 2021.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12. The updated information will include audited financial statements for the District, if the District commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not provided by that time, the District will provide unaudited financial statements for the applicable fiscal year to the MSRB with the financial information and operating data and will file the annual audit report when and if the same becomes available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in the District's annual financial statements or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to state law or regulation.

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the end of February in each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

#### **Notice of Certain Events**

The District will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. The District will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy,

insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) appointment of a successor or additional paying agent/registrant or the change of name of a paying agent/registrant, if material; and (15) incurrence of a Financial Obligation of the District, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a Financial Obligation of the District, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or others similar events under the terms of a Financial Obligation of the District, any of which reflect financial difficulties. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB. Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for a bond trustee, debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. In the Order, the District adopted policies and procedures to ensure timely compliance of its continuing disclosure undertakings.

For these purposes, (a) an event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, and (b) the District intends the words used in the immediately preceding clauses (15) and (16) and in the definition of Financial Obligation above to have the meanings ascribed to them in SEC Release No. 34-83885 dated August 20, 2018.

### **Availability of Information**

All information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB through EMMA at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that has been provided except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement. Nothing in this paragraph is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive or limit the District's duties under federal or state securities laws.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if, but only if, (1) the agreement, as so amended, would have permitted underwriters to purchase or sell Bonds in the initial primary offering in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District amends its agreement, it has agreed to include with the financial information and operating data next provided, in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and operating data so provided.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the past five years, the District has complied in all material respects with all disclosure agreements made in accordance with the Rule. Due to Hurricane Harvey (and the subsequent closure of the District and the local financial institution), the District did not timely make its September 1, 2017 interest payment. The payment was made on September 5, 2017, the date of the bank's reopening.

## **LITIGATION**

In the opinion of District officials, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District.

## **FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS**

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

## WINNING BIDDER

After requesting competitive bids for the Bonds, the District accepted the bid of \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Purchaser" or the "Initial Purchaser") to purchase the Bonds at the interest rates shown on the page 2 of this Official Statement at a price of par, plus a [net] reoffering premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from their Dated Date to their date of initial delivery. The District can give no assurance that any trading market will be developed for the District after their sale by the District to the Purchaser. The District has no control over the price at which the Bonds are subsequently sold and the initial yield at which the Bonds will be priced and reoffered will be established by and will be the responsibility of the Purchaser.

### CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND NO LITIGATION

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Initial Bond, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the District, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the District contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the District and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the District, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the District believes to be reliable and the District has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; (d) except as may be otherwise described in the Official Statement, there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the District, since August 31, 2020, the date of the last financial statements of the District appearing in the Official Statement; and (e) no litigation of any nature has been filed or is pending, as of the date hereof, to restrain or enjoin the issuance or delivery of the Bonds or which would affect the provisions made for their payment or security or in any manner question the validity of the Bonds.

### CONCLUDING STATEMENT

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects.

The Order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds will also approve the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and will authorize its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Purchaser and be approved by the Board for distribution in accordance with the provisions of the SEC's rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c2-12, as amended.

/s/

---

President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

/s/

---

Secretary, Board of Trustees



**APPENDIX A**

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT**

**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**Financial Information**

**ASSESSED VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>**

2020/21 Total Valuation.....		\$ 848,896,312
Less Exemptions & Deductions <sup>(2)</sup> :		
State Homestead Exemption	\$ 17,817,950	
State Over-65 Exemption	3,111,710	
Disabled Exemption	615,120	
Veterans Exemption	346,650	
Productivity Loss	215,401,567	
Homestead Cap Loss	4,833,160	
	<u>\$ 242,126,157</u>	
2020/21 Net Taxable Valuation .....		\$ 606,770,155
2021/22 Certified Net Taxable Valuation .....		\$ 522,094,850

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment that is on the ballot in the November 3, 2015 election increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES -- Residential Homestead Exemptions" in this Official Statement.  
 (2) Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers which totaled \$6,232,042 in 2020/21.  
 (3) Source: Certified Value from the San Augustine County Appraisal District as of July 2021.

**VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT**

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding		\$ -
Plus: The Series 2021 Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		2,000,000
Plus: The Series 2021A Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		<u>7,000,000</u>
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		9,000,000
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of August 31, 2020) <sup>(2)</sup>		<u>-</u>
Net General Obligation Debt		\$ 9,000,000
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(3)</sup>	1.72%	
2021 Population Estimate <sup>(4)</sup>	2,073	
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$251,855	
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$4,342	

(1) Preliminary, subject to change. The Bonds are anticipated to be issued contemporaneously with the Series 2021 Bonds.  
 (2) Source: Broaddus ISD estimated ending fund balance.  
 (3) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in this Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2020" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's long-term obligations other than unlimited tax bonds.  
 (4) Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

**PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation		Tax Rate	% Collections <sup>(4)</sup>	
				Current <sup>(5)</sup>	Total <sup>(5)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 59,669,122	<sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 1.3700	<sup>(6)</sup> 93.12%	100.24%
2007/08	62,640,242	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.0400	<sup>(6)</sup> 93.34%	100.23%
2008/09	64,702,430	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.0400	92.19%	97.17%
2009/10	70,134,300	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.0400	92.91%	99.64%
2010/11	69,382,870	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	92.61%	99.27%
2011/12	73,934,110	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	93.29%	97.46%
2012/13	127,094,480	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.0400	91.35%	94.45%
2013/14	111,962,260	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	89.46%	97.10%
2014/15	115,159,870	<sup>(1)</sup>	1.1700	92.36%	97.60%
2015/16	153,986,980	<sup>(1)(3)</sup>	1.1700	93.77%	97.09%
2016/17	137,099,270	<sup>(1)(3)</sup>	1.1700	94.82%	100.63%
2017/18	188,381,700	<sup>(1)(3)</sup>	1.1700	95.47%	98.98%
2018/19	344,047,050	<sup>(1)(3)</sup>	1.1000	97.52%	99.88%
2019/20	664,104,126	<sup>(1)(3)</sup>	1.0200	<sup>(7)</sup> 97.86%	99.10%
2020/21	606,770,155	<sup>(1)(3)</sup>	1.0093	(In Process of Collection)	
2021/22	522,094,850	<sup>(2)(3)</sup>			

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.  
 (2) Source: Certified Value from the San Augustine County Appraisal District as of July 2021.  
 (3) The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.  
 (4) Source: Broaddus ISD Audited Financial Statements.  
 (5) Excludes penalties and interest.  
 (6) The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax from the 2006/07 fiscal year to the 2007/08 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in this Official Statement.  
 (7) The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax from the 2018/19 fiscal year to the 2019/20 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM"- Local Funding for School Districts" in this Official Statement.

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION <sup>(1)</sup>**

	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19	2019/20 <sup>(2)</sup>	2020/21
Maintenance & Operations	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1000	\$1.0200	\$1.0093
Debt Service	\$0.0000	\$0.0000	\$0.0000	\$0.0000	\$0.0000
<b>Total Tax Rate</b>	<b>\$1.1700</b>	<b>\$1.1700</b>	<b>\$1.1000</b>	<b>\$1.0200</b>	<b>\$1.0093</b>

(1) On August 21, 2010 the District successfully held a tax ratification election.

(2) The decline in the District's Maintenance & Operations Tax from the 2018/19 fiscal year to the 2019/20 fiscal year is a function of House Bill 3 adopted by the Texas Legislature in June 2019.

**VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding <sup>(1)</sup>	Ratio Debt to A.V. <sup>(2)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 59,669,122	\$ -	0.00%
2007/08	62,640,242	-	0.00%
2008/09	64,702,430	-	0.00%
2009/10	70,134,300	-	0.00%
2010/11	69,382,870	-	0.00%
2011/12	73,934,110	-	0.00%
2012/13	127,094,480	-	0.00%
2013/14	111,962,260	-	0.00%
2014/15	115,159,870	-	0.00%
2015/16	153,986,980	-	0.00%
2016/17	137,099,270	-	0.00%
2017/18	188,381,700	-	0.00%
2018/19	344,047,050	-	0.00%
2019/20	664,104,126	-	0.00%
2020/21	606,770,155	-	0.00%
2021/22	522,094,850 <sup>(3)</sup>	8,330,000 <sup>(4)</sup>	1.60%

(1) At fiscal year end.

(2) See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in this Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2020" in Appendix D for more information.

(3) Source: Certified Value from the San Augustine County Appraisal District as of July 2021.

(4) Includes the Bonds and the Series 2021 Bonds.

**ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT**

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
San Augustine Co	\$ 255,000	53.14%	\$ 135,507
Total Overlapping Debt <sup>(1)</sup>			\$ 135,507
Broaddus Independent School District <sup>(2)</sup>			9,000,000
Total Direct & Overlapping Debt <sup>(2)</sup>			\$ 9,135,507
Ratio of Net Direct & Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation		1.75%	
Per Capita Direct & Overlapping Debt		\$4,407	

(1) Equals gross debt less self-supporting debt.

(2) Includes the Bonds and the Series 2021 Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.

**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS <sup>(1)</sup>****2020/21 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
XTO Energy Inc. (WI)	Oil & Gas	\$ 259,290,450	42.73%
BP America Production Co.	Oil & Gas	125,966,690	20.76%
Black Stone Minerals Co.	Oil & Gas	42,888,670	7.07%
XTO Energy Inc. (RI/OR)	Oil & Gas	7,846,900	1.29%
Midcoast Pipeline LP	Pipeline	5,302,230	0.87%
Crown Pine Timber 2 LP	Lumber Processing	4,165,840	0.69%
Deep East Texas Electric Co-Op	Electric Utility	2,012,670	0.33%
Sugarberry-Kirby JV Ltd.	Oil & Gas	1,681,960	0.28%
Maxine H. Gwinn	Oil & Gas	1,571,290	0.26%
Thomas B. Gwinn	Oil & Gas	1,151,080	0.19%
		<u>\$ 451,877,780</u>	<u>74.47%</u>

**2019/20 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
XTO Energy Inc. (WI)	Oil & Gas	\$ 257,566,970	38.78%
BP America Production Co.	Oil & Gas	171,097,470	25.76%
Black Stone Minerals Co.	Oil & Gas	50,045,210	7.54%
XTO Energy Inc. (RI/OR)	Oil & Gas	13,299,600	2.00%
Nabors Lux 2	Drilling Services	5,358,000	0.81%
Midcoast Pipeline LP	Pipeline	5,029,900	0.76%
Scan Endeavor Ltd.	Drilling Services	4,418,000	0.67%
Crown Pine Timber 2 LP	Lumber Processing	4,012,460	0.60%
Deep East Texas Electric Co-Op	Electric Utility	2,055,360	0.31%
Sugarberry-Kirby JV Ltd.	Oil & Gas	1,949,890	0.29%
		<u>\$ 514,832,860</u>	<u>77.52%</u>

**2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
BP America Production Co.	Oil & Gas	\$ 91,234,240	26.52%
XTO Energy Inc. (WI)	Oil & Gas	82,216,610	23.90%
Black Stone Minerals Co.	Oil & Gas	16,861,600	4.90%
XTO Energy Inc. (RI/OR)	Oil & Gas	11,384,110	3.31%
Nabors Lux 2	Drilling Services	5,076,000	1.48%
Enbridge Pipeline LP	Pipeline	4,894,950	1.42%
Precision Drilling Co.	Drilling Services	4,614,720	1.34%
Crown Pine Timber 2 LP	Lumber Processing	3,957,860	1.15%
Cactus Drilling Co.	Drilling Services	3,888,000	1.13%
Scan Endeavor Ltd.	Drilling Services	3,760,000	1.09%
		<u>\$ 227,888,090</u>	<u>66.24%</u>

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

Note: As shown herein, seven of the ten largest taxpayers in the District are concentrated in the oil and gas industry, and represent approximately 72.58% of the taxable assessed valuation of the District for year 2020/21. In addition, the District is highly concentrated in the top tax payer that accounts for over 42% of the District's taxable assessed valuation. Oil/gas prices in Texas and worldwide have been historically subject to fluctuation due to a multitude of factors. Recently, unprecedented volatility in the oil and gas industry has occurred as a result of COVID-19. See "COVID-19" herein. The State may be particularly at risk from any global slowdown in the oil and gas industry, given the prevalence of international trade in the State and the risk of contraction in the oil and gas industry and spillover effects into other industries. Should oil prices remain depressed over a long period of time or other adverse developments in economic conditions were to occur, particularly in the oil and gas industry, these businesses could be adversely impacted. As a result, the District's taxable assessed valuation and, therefore, the tax rates required to pay debt service on the District's bonds, may be subject to volatility in future years. In addition, under State law, the District is generally permitted to levy debt service taxes in an amount sufficient to cover debt payments coming due during the tax year. As a result, the District may not have sufficient reserves available in its debt service fund in the event that a significant taxpayer should experience financial difficulties and be unable to timely pay taxes as they come due. The District has not had a history of being unable to collect current taxes to fund its operations. If any major taxpayer were to default in the payment of taxes, the ability of the District to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds will be dependent on its ability to enforce and liquidate its tax lien, which is a time-consuming process which can only occur annually, or, perhaps, to sell tax anticipation notes until such amounts could be collected, if ever.

**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY <sup>(1)</sup>**

<u>Category</u>	<u>2020/21</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2019/20</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2018/19</u>	<u>% of Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 76,892,810	9.06%	\$ 65,339,860	7.97%	\$ 60,579,090	12.11%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	8,140,480	0.96%	7,008,180	0.85%	6,905,840	1.38%
Real, Qualified Land & Improvements	228,764,062	26.95%	143,055,068	17.44%	143,130,630	28.61%
Real, Non-Qualified Land & Improvements	37,621,130	4.43%	33,426,760	4.08%	32,888,940	6.57%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	3,356,250	0.40%	3,286,940	0.40%	2,935,700	0.59%
Oil & Gas	477,598,820	56.26%	540,182,390	65.87%	219,050,510	43.79%
Utilities	9,667,480	1.14%	9,362,260	1.14%	9,160,670	1.83%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	2,220,840	0.26%	2,550,228	0.31%	2,149,570	0.43%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	1,361,400	0.16%	12,838,070	1.57%	20,450,030	4.09%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	2,939,250	0.35%	2,693,120	0.33%	2,673,680	0.53%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	333,790	0.04%	338,790	0.04%	338,790	0.07%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 848,896,312</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 820,081,666</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 500,263,450</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 4,833,160		\$ 3,474,860		\$ 3,496,090	
Productivity Loss	215,401,567		130,188,640		130,763,420	
Exemptions <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>21,891,430</u>		<u>22,314,040</u>		<u>21,956,890</u>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$ 242,126,157</u>		<u>\$ 155,977,540</u>		<u>\$ 156,216,400</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 606,770,155</b>		<b>\$ 664,104,126</b>		<b>\$ 344,047,050</b>	

<u>Category</u>	<u>2017/18</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2016/17</u>	<u>% of Total</u>	<u>2015/16</u>	<u>% of Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 55,933,030	16.41%	\$ 51,368,880	17.75%	\$ 49,484,820	16.09%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	6,993,640	2.05%	6,996,000	2.42%	7,088,690	2.30%
Real, Qualified Land & Improvements	143,380,450	42.06%	143,586,890	49.62%	142,736,870	46.41%
Real, Non-Qualified Land & Improvements	29,523,140	8.66%	27,904,510	9.64%	27,532,370	8.95%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	2,650,760	0.78%	2,636,620	0.91%	2,704,120	0.88%
Oil & Gas	84,370,400	24.75%	42,668,820	14.75%	65,024,810	21.14%
Utilities	7,192,240	2.11%	8,082,720	2.79%	6,979,670	2.27%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	2,446,230	0.72%	2,440,570	0.84%	2,043,430	0.66%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	5,579,270	1.64%	868,010	0.30%	1,149,230	0.37%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	2,486,900	0.73%	2,473,400	0.85%	2,449,920	0.80%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	338,790	0.10%	338,790	0.12%	364,290	0.12%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 340,894,850</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 289,365,210</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 307,558,220</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 780,790		\$ 295,170		\$ 384,480	
Productivity Loss	131,003,770		131,779,170		132,829,950	
Exemptions <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>20,728,590</u>		<u>20,191,600</u>		<u>20,356,810</u>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(3)</sup>	<u>\$ 152,513,150</u>		<u>\$ 152,265,940</u>		<u>\$ 153,571,240</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 188,381,700</b>		<b>\$ 137,099,270</b>		<b>\$ 153,986,980</b>	

(1) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(2) The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(3) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

**PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Bonds	Plus: The Series 2021 Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Total <sup>(1)</sup>	Bonds Unpaid At Fiscal Year End	Percent of Principal Retired
2022	\$ -	\$ 100,000.00	\$ 570,000.00	\$ 670,000.00	\$ 8,330,000.00	7.44%
2023	-	100,000.00	445,000.00	545,000.00	7,785,000.00	13.50%
2024	-	100,000.00	320,000.00	420,000.00	7,365,000.00	18.17%
2025	-	100,000.00	195,000.00	295,000.00	7,070,000.00	21.44%
2026	-	100,000.00	200,000.00	300,000.00	6,770,000.00	24.78%
2027	-	100,000.00	205,000.00	305,000.00	6,465,000.00	28.17%
2028	-	100,000.00	215,000.00	315,000.00	6,150,000.00	31.67%
2029	-	100,000.00	220,000.00	320,000.00	5,830,000.00	35.22%
2030	-	100,000.00	230,000.00	330,000.00	5,500,000.00	38.89%
2031	-	100,000.00	240,000.00	340,000.00	5,160,000.00	42.67%
2032	-	100,000.00	245,000.00	345,000.00	4,815,000.00	46.50%
2033	-	100,000.00	255,000.00	355,000.00	4,460,000.00	50.44%
2034	-	100,000.00	265,000.00	365,000.00	4,095,000.00	54.50%
2035	-	100,000.00	275,000.00	375,000.00	3,720,000.00	58.67%
2036	-	100,000.00	285,000.00	385,000.00	3,335,000.00	62.94%
2037	-	100,000.00	295,000.00	395,000.00	2,940,000.00	67.33%
2038	-	100,000.00	305,000.00	405,000.00	2,535,000.00	71.83%
2039	-	100,000.00	315,000.00	415,000.00	2,120,000.00	76.44%
2040	-	100,000.00	325,000.00	425,000.00	1,695,000.00	81.17%
2041	-	100,000.00	335,000.00	435,000.00	1,260,000.00	86.00%
2042	-		240,000.00	240,000.00	1,020,000.00	88.67%
2043	-		245,000.00	245,000.00	775,000.00	91.39%
2044	-		250,000.00	250,000.00	525,000.00	94.17%
2045	-		260,000.00	260,000.00	265,000.00	97.06%
2046	-		265,000.00	265,000.00	-	100.00%
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 2,000,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 7,000,000.00</b>	<b>\$ 9,000,000.00</b>		

(1) Preliminary, subject to change. The Bonds are anticipated to be issued contemporaneously with the Series 2021 Bonds.

**DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service	Plus: The Series 2021 Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>			Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>			Combined Total <sup>(1) (2)</sup>
		Principal	Interest	Total	Principal	Interest	Total	
2022	\$ -	\$ 100,000.00	\$ 55,000.00	\$ 155,000.00	\$ 570,000.00	\$ 159,625.00	\$ 729,625.00	\$ 884,625.00
2023	-	100,000.00	50,000.00	150,000.00	445,000.00	149,475.00	594,475.00	744,475.00
2024	-	100,000.00	45,000.00	145,000.00	320,000.00	141,825.00	461,825.00	606,825.00
2025	-	100,000.00	41,250.00	141,250.00	195,000.00	136,675.00	331,675.00	472,925.00
2026	-	100,000.00	38,750.00	138,750.00	200,000.00	132,725.00	332,725.00	471,475.00
2027	-	100,000.00	36,250.00	136,250.00	205,000.00	128,675.00	333,675.00	469,925.00
2028	-	100,000.00	33,750.00	133,750.00	215,000.00	123,937.50	338,937.50	472,687.50
2029	-	100,000.00	31,250.00	131,250.00	220,000.00	118,500.00	338,500.00	469,750.00
2030	-	100,000.00	28,750.00	128,750.00	230,000.00	112,875.00	342,875.00	471,625.00
2031	-	100,000.00	26,250.00	126,250.00	240,000.00	107,000.00	347,000.00	473,250.00
2032	-	100,000.00	23,750.00	123,750.00	245,000.00	100,937.50	345,937.50	469,687.50
2033	-	100,000.00	21,250.00	121,250.00	255,000.00	94,687.50	349,687.50	470,937.50
2034	-	100,000.00	18,750.00	118,750.00	265,000.00	88,187.50	353,187.50	471,937.50
2035	-	100,000.00	16,250.00	116,250.00	275,000.00	81,437.50	356,437.50	472,687.50
2036	-	100,000.00	13,750.00	113,750.00	285,000.00	74,437.50	359,437.50	473,187.50
2037	-	100,000.00	11,250.00	111,250.00	295,000.00	67,187.50	362,187.50	473,437.50
2038	-	100,000.00	8,750.00	108,750.00	305,000.00	59,687.50	364,687.50	473,437.50
2039	-	100,000.00	6,250.00	106,250.00	315,000.00	51,937.50	366,937.50	473,187.50
2040	-	100,000.00	3,750.00	103,750.00	325,000.00	43,937.50	368,937.50	472,687.50
2041	-	100,000.00	1,250.00	101,250.00	335,000.00	35,687.50	370,687.50	471,937.50
2042	-	-	-	-	240,000.00	28,500.00	268,500.00	268,500.00
2043	-	-	-	-	245,000.00	22,437.50	267,437.50	267,437.50
2044	-	-	-	-	250,000.00	16,250.00	266,250.00	266,250.00
2045	-	-	-	-	260,000.00	9,875.00	269,875.00	269,875.00
2046	-	-	-	-	265,000.00	3,312.50	268,312.50	268,312.50
	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 2,000,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 511,250.00</u>	<u>\$ 2,511,250.00</u>	<u>\$ 7,000,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 2,089,812.50</u>	<u>\$ 9,089,812.50</u>	<u>\$ 11,601,062.50</u>

(1) Preliminary, subject to change. The Bonds are anticipated to be issued contemporaneously with the Series 2021 Bonds.  
(2) Based on its wealth per student, the District does not expect to receive Instructional Allotment nor Existing Debt Allotment state financial assistance for the payment of debt service for the fiscal year 2021/22. The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in this Official Statement.

**TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS**

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 884,625.00
Projected State Financial Assistance <sup>(2)</sup>	-
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement	\$ 884,625.00
 \$0.17115 Tax Rate @ 99% Collections Produces	 \$ 884,625.00
 2021/22 Certified Net Taxable Valuation	 \$ 522,094,850

(1) Includes the Bonds and the Series 2021 Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.  
(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM."

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

Following the issuance of the Bonds and the Series 2021 Bonds, the District will not have any authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from the May 1, 2021 or any other election. The District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES <sup>(1)</sup>

	Fiscal Year Ending August 31				
	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
<b>Beginning Fund Balance</b>	\$ 2,490,737	\$ 2,425,414	\$ 2,623,726	\$ 2,910,533	\$ 4,109,148
<b>Revenues:</b>					
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 1,722,453	\$ 1,977,549	\$ 2,160,301	\$ 3,761,898	\$ 6,669,317
State Sources	2,373,693	2,273,215	2,596,060	2,057,765	605,035
Federal Sources & Other	80,167	416,168	347,423	339,243	305,572
<b>Total Revenues</b>	\$ 4,176,313	\$ 4,666,932	\$ 5,103,784	\$ 6,158,906	\$ 7,579,924
<b>Expenditures:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 2,019,817	\$ 2,088,377	\$ 2,195,592	\$ 2,142,879	\$ 2,956,994
Instructional Resources & Media Services	17,443	11,022	3,146	13,744	33,918
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	1,200	956	2,489	5,814	-
Instructional Leadership	9,032	9,088	9,030	9,634	13,402
School Leadership	258,428	261,692	265,865	279,518	288,063
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	48,865	52,770	54,624	92,574	86,106
Health Services	60,845	62,154	67,163	70,371	81,257
Student (Pupil) Transportation	562,523	287,276	246,477	461,978	251,731
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	100,679	90,149	86,678	125,708	135,339
General Administration	307,837	326,473	319,264	356,847	420,719
Plant Maintenance and Operations	487,713	509,177	687,694	613,926	571,771
Security and Monitoring Services	2,880	1,857	350	1,128	6,967
Data Processing Services	135,753	144,977	164,962	195,214	205,544
Principal on Long-Term Debt	303,835	481,179	550,326	360,543	390,315
Interest on Long-Term Debt	139,382	-	-	-	-
Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	1,529	-	-	-	-
Capital Outlay	-	-	6,000	32,228	824,616
Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	68,622	77,200	82,188	75,752	106,038
Other Intergovernmental Charges	55,477	62,935	72,844	109,722	147,387
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	\$ 4,581,860	\$ 4,467,282	\$ 4,814,692	\$ 4,947,580	\$ 6,520,167
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues over Expenditures	\$ (405,547)	\$ 199,650	\$ 289,092	\$ 1,211,326	\$ 1,059,757
<b>Other Resources and (Uses):</b>					
Issuance of Non-Current Debt	\$ 262,348	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers Out	(100,779)	(1,338)	(2,285)	(12,711)	-
Other Financing Uses	-	-	-	-	(60,635)
<b>Total Other Resources (Uses)</b>	\$ 161,569	\$ (1,338)	\$ (2,285)	\$ (12,711)	\$ (60,635)
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources over Expenditures and Other Uses	\$ (243,978)	\$ 198,312	\$ 286,807	\$ 1,198,615	\$ 999,122
Prior Period Adjustment	\$ 178,655	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Ending Fund Balance</b>	\$ 2,425,414	\$ 2,623,726	\$ 2,910,533	\$ 4,109,148	\$ 5,108,270

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2020/21 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition" in this Official Statement.



**CHANGE IN NET ASSETS <sup>(1)</sup>**

	Fiscal Year Ending August 31				
	2016	2017	2018	2019	2020
<b>Revenues:</b>					
<b>Program Revenues:</b>					
Charges for Services	\$ 42,348	\$ 37,603	\$ 39,570	\$ 37,809	\$ 26,716
Operating Grants and Contributions	594,407	597,041	687,512	920,848	1,235,117
<b>General Revenues:</b>					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	1,740,333	1,921,651	2,144,851	3,752,043	6,848,637
Grants & Contributions - Not Restricted	2,288,454	2,521,950	2,764,931	2,219,021	654,854
Investment Earnings	305	2,530	-	(6,770)	13,478
Miscellaneous	17,394	36,867	24,819	14,651	10,038
<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>\$ 4,683,241</b>	<b>\$ 5,117,642</b>	<b>\$ 5,661,683</b>	<b>\$ 6,937,602</b>	<b>\$ 8,788,840</b>
<b>Expenses:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 2,541,912	\$ 2,599,217	\$ 2,149,365	\$ 2,822,888	\$ 3,828,983
Instruction Resources & Media Services	17,536	10,932	3,146	14,362	36,382
Curriculum & Staff Development	1,200	956	3,139	5,814	2,700
Instructional Leadership	12,434	12,581	14,298	13,750	19,190
School Leadership	265,947	255,874	238,239	309,973	320,965
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	49,545	51,626	49,073	111,899	107,711
Health Service	79,662	76,865	70,431	88,799	103,602
Student Transportation	355,057	311,957	285,543	341,913	331,772
Food Service	312,734	289,657	254,161	284,462	355,864
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	154,648	109,543	102,277	139,081	164,638
General Administration	310,960	321,199	303,975	384,431	458,778
Plant Maintenance & Operations	491,623	507,215	636,755	585,796	598,339
Security & Monitoring Services	13,995	12,972	2,203	6,355	7,653
Data Processing Services	136,799	143,390	156,275	208,430	218,125
Interest on Long-term Debt	160,479	144,188	134,634	71,344	119,276
Bond Issuance Costs and Fees	1,529	500	750	250	250
Capital Outlay	-	-	6,000	32,228	198,086
Payments Related to Shared Service Arrangements	68,622	77,200	82,188	75,752	106,038
Other Intergovernmental Charges	55,477	62,935	72,844	109,722	147,387
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<b>\$ 5,030,159</b>	<b>\$ 4,988,807</b>	<b>\$ 4,565,296</b>	<b>\$ 5,607,249</b>	<b>\$ 7,125,739</b>
<b>Change in Net Assets</b>	<b>\$ (346,918)</b>	<b>\$ 128,835</b>	<b>\$ 1,096,387</b>	<b>\$ 1,330,353</b>	<b>\$ 1,663,101</b>
<b>Beginning Net Assets</b>	<b>\$ 5,357,567</b>	<b>\$ 5,218,131</b>	<b>\$ 5,346,966</b>	<b>\$ 2,698,787</b>	<b>\$ 4,029,140</b>
<b>Prior Period Adjustment</b>	<b>\$ 207,482 <sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ (3,744,566) <sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>
<b>Ending Net Assets</b>	<b>\$ 5,218,131</b>	<b>\$ 5,346,966</b>	<b>\$ 2,698,787</b>	<b>\$ 4,029,140</b>	<b>\$ 5,692,241</b>

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34.

(2) The prior period adjustment is from the District adopting GASB Statement No. 68 for Accounting and Reporting for Pensions.

(3) The prior period adjustment is from the District implementing GASB Statement No. 75 for Other Post-Employment Benefits.

**APPENDIX B**

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT  
AND ITS ECONOMY**

**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**General and Economic Information**

Broaddus Independent School District encompasses 280.47 square miles in San Augustine County. The District is located in the southwestern corner of the County, approximately 150 miles northeast of downtown Houston. The City of Broaddus is located entirely within the District.

Source: *Texas Municipal Report for Broaddus ISD.*

**Enrollment Statistics**

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2011	470
2012	459
2013	436
2014	415
2015	413
2016	420
2017	404
2018	396
2019	396
2020	396
2021	358

**District Staff**

Teachers	36
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	14
Auxiliary Personnel	15
Administrators	3
Other	6
<b>Total</b>	<b>74</b>

**Facilities**

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grades</u>	<u>Current Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/ Renovation</u>
Elementary School	PK-5	171	300	1950	N/A
Junior High / High School	6-12	187	450	2000	N/A

**Principal Employers within the District**

<u>Name of Company</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
Broaddus ISD	Education	74
Miller Trucking	Trucking	20
B and B Express	Grocery Store	15
Lacy's Tire Shop	Tires	15
Family Dollar	Merchandise Store	10

**Unemployment Rates**

	<u>June 2019</u>	<u>June 2020</u>	<u>June 2021</u>
San Augustine County	4.7%	11.6%	9.8%
State of Texas	3.8%	10.3%	6.6%

Source: *Texas Workforce Commission.*

**APPENDIX C**

**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**

September 9, 2021

**BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2021A  
DATED AS OF AUGUST 15, 2021  
IN THE AGGREGATE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT OF \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

**AS BOND COUNSEL FOR THE BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT** (the *District*) in connection with the issuance of the bonds described above (the *Bonds*), we have examined into the legality and validity of the Bonds, which bear interest from the dates specified in the text of the Bonds until maturity or prior redemption at the rates and are payable on the dates as stated in the text of the Bonds, all in accordance with the terms and conditions stated in the text of the Bonds.

**WE HAVE EXAMINED** the applicable and pertinent provisions of the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas and a transcript of certified proceedings of the District, and other pertinent instruments authorizing and relating to the issuance of the Bonds including (i) the order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds (the *Order*), (ii) one of the executed Bonds (*Bond No. T-1*), and (iii) the District's Federal Tax Certificate of even date herewith.

**BASED ON SAID EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION** that the Bonds have been authorized, issued and delivered in accordance with law; that the Bonds constitute valid and legally binding general obligations of the District in accordance with their terms except as the enforceability thereof may be limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, liquidation and other similar laws now or hereafter enacted relating to creditors' rights generally; that the District has the legal authority to issue the Bonds and to repay the Bonds; and that ad valorem taxes sufficient to provide for the payment of the interest on and principal of the Bonds, as such interest comes due, and as such principal matures, have been levied and ordered to be levied against all taxable property in the District, and have been pledged for such payment, without limit as to rate or amount.

**IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION**, except as discussed below, that the interest on the Bonds is excludable from the gross income of the owners for federal income tax purposes under the statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions existing on the date of this opinion. We are further of the opinion that the Bonds are not "specified private activity bonds" and that, accordingly, interest on the Bonds will not be included as an individual alternative minimum tax preference item under section 57(a)(5) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (the *Code*). In expressing the aforementioned opinions, we have relied on and assume continuing compliance with, certain representations contained in the Federal Tax Certificate of the District and covenants set forth in the order adopted by the District to authorize the issuance of the Bonds, relating to, among other matters, the use of the project and the investment and expenditure of the proceeds and certain other amounts used to pay or to secure the payment of debt service on the Bonds, and the certificate with respect to arbitrage by the Commissioner of Education regarding



the allocation and investment of certain investments in the Permanent School Fund, the accuracy of which we have not independently verified. We call your attention to the fact that if such representations are determined to be inaccurate or if the District fails to comply with such covenants, interest on the Bonds may become includable in gross income retroactively to the date of issuance of the Bonds.

**EXCEPT AS STATED ABOVE**, we express no opinion as to any other federal, state or local tax consequences of acquiring, carrying, owning or disposing of the Bonds, including the amount, accrual or receipt of interest on, the Bonds. Owners of the Bonds should consult their tax advisors regarding the applicability of any collateral tax consequences of owning the Bonds.

**OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED ON EXISTING LAW**, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service (the *Service*); rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above that we deem relevant to such opinions. The Service has an ongoing audit program to determine compliance with rules that relate to whether interest on state or local obligations is includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes. No assurance can be given whether or not the Service will commence an audit of the Bonds. If an audit is commenced, in accordance with its current published procedures the Service is likely to treat the District as the taxpayer. We observe that the District has covenanted not to take any action, or omit to take any action within its control, that if taken or omitted, respectively, may result in the treatment of interest on the Bonds as includable in gross income for federal income tax purposes.

**OUR SOLE ENGAGEMENT** in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is as Bond Counsel for the District, and, in that capacity, we have been engaged by the District for the sole purpose of rendering an opinion with respect to the legality and validity of the Bonds under the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, and with respect to the exclusion from gross income of the interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes, and for no other reason or purpose. The foregoing opinions represent our legal judgment based upon a review of existing legal authorities that we deem relevant to render such opinions and are not a guarantee of a result. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the District, or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds, and have not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the marketability of the Bonds and have relied solely on certificates executed by officials of the District as to the current outstanding indebtedness of, and assessed valuation of taxable property within, the District. Our role in connection with the District's Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

Respectfully,

**APPENDIX D**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2020**

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
Broaddus, Texas

ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT

For the Year Ended August 31, 2020



TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EXHIBIT NO.</u>
INTRODUCTORY SECTION:		
Certificate of Board .....	4	
FINANCIAL SECTION:		
Independent Auditors' Report .....	6	
Management's Discussion and Analysis (Required Supplementary Information) .....	8	
Basic Financial Statements:		
Government-Wide Financial Statements:		
Statement of Net Position .....	13	A-1
Statement of Activities.....	14	B-1
Fund Financial Statements:		
Balance Sheet - Governmental Funds.....	15	C-1
Reconciliation of the Governmental Funds - Balance Sheet to the Statement of Net Position .....	16	C-1R
Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds .....	17	C-2
Reconciliation of the Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances of Governmental Funds to the Statement of Activities.....	18	C-3
Statement of Fiduciary Net Position - Fiduciary Funds.....	19	E-1
Notes to the Financial Statements.....	20	
Required Supplementary Information:		
Budgetary Comparison Schedules:		
General Fund Schedule of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Funds Balances - Budgetary Comparison .....	36	G-1
Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability - Teacher Retirement System .....	37	G-2
Schedule of the District Contributions - Teacher Retirement System.....	38	G-3
Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of OPEB Liability and District's OPEB Liability and District's OPEB Contributions - Teacher Retirement System.....	39	G-4
Notes to Required Supplementary Information...	40	
Combining Statements and Budget Comparisons as Supplementary Information:		
Special Revenue Funds:		
Combining Balance Sheet - Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds .....	42	H-1
Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balances - Nonmajor Special Revenue Funds .....	44	H-2
Other Supplementary Information:		
Schedule of Delinquent Taxes Receivable.....	47	J-1
Budgetary Comparison Schedules Required by the Texas Education Agency:		
National School Breakfast and Lunch Program.....	49	J-2
Independent Auditors' Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i> .....		
	50	
Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs .....	51	
Summary Schedule of Prior Audit Findings .....	52	
Corrective Action Plan .....	53	
Schedule of Required Responses to Selected School First Indicators .....	54	L-1

## INTRODUCTORY SECTION

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CERTIFICATE OF BOARD  
August 31, 2020

Broaddus Independent School District  
Name of School District

San Augustine  
County

203-902  
Co.-Dist. Number

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above-named school district were reviewed and (check one)  approved  disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2020, at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 11<sup>th</sup> day of January, 2021.



Signature of Board Secretary



Signature of Board President

If the Board of Trustees disapproved of the auditors' report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is (are): (attach list as necessary)

FINANCIAL SECTION

INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT

Board of Trustees  
Broaddus Independent School District  
Broaddus, Texas

**Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Broaddus Independent School District ("the District"), as of and for the year ended August 31, 2020, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

**Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements**

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

**Auditor's Responsibility**

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risk of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the District's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the District's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

**Opinions**

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Broaddus Independent School District as of August 31, 2020, and the respective changes in financial position for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

## Other Matters

### *Required Supplementary Information*

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the management's discussion and analysis, budgetary comparison information, schedules of the District's proportionate share of the net pension and OPEB liabilities and schedules of District pension and OPEB contributions identified as required supplementary information in the table of contents be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

### *Other Information*

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the Broadus Independent School District's basic financial statements. The introductory section and combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not required parts of the basic financial statements. The accompanying other supplementary information is presented for purposes of additional analysis and is also not a required part of the basic financial statements.

The combining and individual nonmajor funds financial statements and other supplementary information are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relate directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining funds financial statements, schedule of expenditures of federal awards, and other supplementary information are fairly stated in all material respects in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

The introductory section has not been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and, accordingly, we do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on it.

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated January 11, 2021 on our consideration of the District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

Lufkin, Texas  
January 11, 2021

This section of Broaddus Independent School District's annual financial report presents our discussion and analysis of the District's financial performance during the fiscal year ending in August 31, 2020. Please read it in conjunction with the District's financial statements, which follow this section.

**FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS**

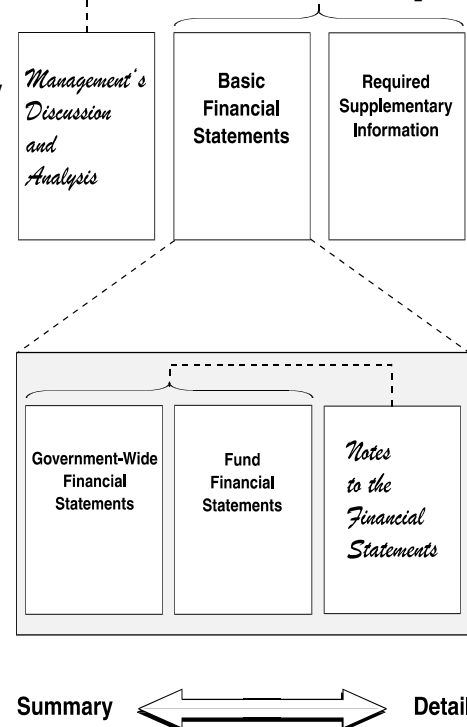
- The District's total combined net position was \$5,692,241 at August 31, 2020, an increase of \$1,663,101 from the prior year.
- During the current year, the District's expenses were \$7,125,739, compared to \$5,607,249 in the prior year. The net expenses, after deducting amounts paid to the District for charges for services and grants were \$5,863,906 during the current year and \$4,648,592 in the prior year.
- During the current year, the District received \$1,235,117 in operating and capital grants compared to \$920,848 for the prior year.
- The general fund reported a fund balance this year of \$5,108,270, which includes \$1,600,000 committed by the School Board for future construction projects.

**OVERVIEW OF THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

This annual report consists of three parts - *management's discussion and analysis* (this section), the *basic financial statements*, and *required supplementary information*. The basic financial statements include two kinds of statements that present different views of the District:

- The first two statements are *government-wide financial statements* that provide both *long-term* and *short-term* information about the District's overall financial status.
- The remaining statements are *fund financial statements* that focus on *individual parts* of the government, reporting the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements.
- *The governmental funds* statements tell how *general government* services were financed in the *short term* as well as what remains for future spending.
- *Fiduciary fund* statements provide information about the financial relationships in which the District acts solely as a *trustee or agent* for the benefit of others, to whom the resources in question belong.

**Figure A-1, Required Components of the District's Annual Financial Report**



The financial statements also include notes that explain some of the information in the financial statements and provide more detailed data. The statements are followed by a section of *required supplementary information* that further explains and supports the information in the financial statements. Figure A-1 shows how the required parts of this annual report are arranged and related to one another.

**GOVERNMENT-WIDE STATEMENTS**

The government-wide statements report information about the District as a whole using accounting methods similar to those used by private-sector companies. The statement of net position includes all of the government's assets, liabilities and deferrals. All of the current year's revenues and expenses are accounted for in the statement of activities regardless of when cash is received or paid. The two government-wide statements reported the District's net position and how it has changed. Net position (the difference between the District's assets, liabilities and deferrals) are one way to measure the District's financial health or *position*.

- Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position are an indicator of whether financial health is improving or deteriorating, respectively.
- To assess the overall health of the District, one needs to consider additional non-financial factors such as change in the District's tax base or changes in student enrollment numbers.

The government-wide financial statements of the District included the *Governmental activities*. Most of the District's basic services are included here, such as instruction, extracurricular activities, curriculum and staff development, health services and general administration. Property taxes and grants finance most of these activities.

## Fund Financial Statements

The fund financial statements provide more detailed information about the District's most significant *funds* - not the District as a whole. Funds are accounting devices that the District uses to keep track of specific sources of funding and spending for particular purposes.

- Some funds are required by State law and by bond covenants.
- The Board of Trustees established other funds to control and manage money for particular purposes or to show that it is properly using certain taxes and grants.

### ***The District has two kinds of funds:***

**Governmental Funds** - Most of the District's basic services are included in governmental funds, which focus on (1) how *cash and other financial assets* that can readily be converted to cash flow in and out and (2) the balances left at year-end that are available for spending. Consequently, the governmental fund statements provide a detailed *short-term* view that helps you determine whether there are more or fewer financial resources that can be spent in the near future to finance the District's programs. Because this information does not encompass the additional long-term focus of the government-wide statements, we provide additional information at the bottom of the governmental funds statement, or on the subsequent page, that explain the relationship (or differences) between them.

**Fiduciary Funds** - The District is the trustee, or *fiduciary*, for certain funds. The District is responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in a separate statement of fiduciary net position and a statement of changes in fiduciary net position. We exclude these activities from the District's government-wide financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District's fiduciary funds consist only of money held on behalf of student organizations.

### **Government-wide Financial Analysis**

As year to year financial information is accumulated on a consistent basis, changes in net position may be observed and used to discuss the changing financial position of the District as a whole.

The following table provides a comparative summary of the District's net position:

#### **The Summary of Net Position**

	AUGUST 31,		AMOUNT OF CHANGE	%
	2020	2019		
Current and other assets	\$ 6 041 461	\$ 4 726 429	\$ 1 315 032	28%
Capital and long-term assets	5 951 423	5 649 997	301 426	5%
TOTAL ASSETS	<u>11 992 884</u>	<u>10 376 426</u>	<u>1 616 458</u>	16%
Deferred outflows	876 144	909 811	(33 667)	(4)%
Current liabilities	448 275	350 178	98 097	28%
Long term liabilities	5 224 759	5 776 058	(551 299)	(10)%
TOTAL LIABILITIES	<u>5 673 034</u>	<u>6 126 236</u>	<u>(453 202)</u>	(7)%
Deferred inflow related to pensions	1 503 753	1 130 861	372 892	33%
Net Position:				
Investment in capital assets	3 621 423	3 162 892	458 531	14%
Restricted	-	4 843	(4 843)	(100)%
Unrestricted	2 070 818	861 405	1 209 413	140%
TOTAL NET POSITION	<u>\$ 5 692 241</u>	<u>\$ 4 029 140</u>	<u>\$ 1 663 101</u>	41%

Net position of the District's governmental activities increased 41% to \$5,692,241 during the year ending August 31, 2020. The change in net position was due primarily to increased property tax collections. A portion of the net position is either restricted as to the purposes it can be used for, or invested in capital assets (buildings, vehicles, equipment, and so on). Consequently, unrestricted net position was \$2,070,818 at year end.



## Government Activities

Comparative data is accumulated and presented below to assist analysis. The following table provides a summary of the District's operational activities and changes in net position:

### Summary of Activities & Changes in Net Position

	GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES			% CHANGE
	2020	2019	AMOUNT OF CHANGE	
Revenues:				
Program Revenues:				
Charges for services	\$ 26 716	\$ 37 809	\$ (11 093)	(29)%
Operating grants and contributions	1 235 117	920 848	314 269	34%
General Revenues:				
Property taxes	6 848 637	3 752 043	3 096 594	83%
Investment earnings	13 478	(6 770)	20 248	(299)%
Foundation and unrestricted grants	654 854	2 219 021	(1 564 167)	(70)%
Other general revenues	10 038	14 651	(4 613)	(31)%
TOTAL REVENUES AND CONTRIBUTIONS	8 788 840	6 937 602	1 851 238	27%
Expenses:				
Instruction	3 828 983	2 822 888	1 006 095	36%
Instructional resources and media services	36 382	14 362	22 020	153%
Curriculum and staff development	2 700	5 814	(3 114)	(54)%
Instructional leadership	19 190	13 750	5 440	40%
School leadership	320 965	309 973	10 992	4%
Guidance, counseling and evaluation services	107 711	111 899	(4 188)	(4)%
Health services	103 602	88 799	14 803	17%
Student transportation	331 772	341 913	(10 141)	(3)%
Food service	355 864	284 462	71 402	25%
Curricular/extracurricular activities	164 638	139 081	25 557	18%
General administration	458 778	384 431	74 347	19%
Plant maintenance and operations	598 339	585 796	12 543	2%
Security and monitoring services	7 653	6 355	1 298	20%
Data processing services	218 125	208 430	9 695	5%
Interest on long-term debt	119 276	71 344	47 932	67%
Bond issuance cost and fees	250	250	-	- %
Capital outlay	198 086	32 228	165 858	515%
Payments to fiscal agent for shared service	106 038	75 752	30 286	40%
Other intergovernmental charges	147 387	109 722	37 665	34%
TOTAL EXPENSES	7 125 739	5 607 249	1 518 490	27%
CHANGE IN NET POSITION	1 663 101	1 330 353	332 748	25%
Beginning net position	4 029 140	2 698 787	1 330 353	49%
NET POSITION - ENDING	\$ 5 692 241	\$ 4 029 140	\$ 1 663 101	41.28%

- Property tax rates decreased to \$1.02 per \$100 valuation. The property values increased from the prior year by approximately \$335 million.
- Expenses increased as a result of the House Bill 3 funding requirements.

## Financial Analysis of the District's Funds

Revenues in the General Fund totaled \$7,579,924 compared with \$6,158,906 in the prior year. Property tax revenue was \$3,096,594 higher due to increased taxable values. State available and foundation revenue decreased by \$1,564,167 due primarily to increased local revenues.

The District's total expenditures in its General Fund were \$6,520,167 compared with \$4,947,580 in the prior year. In comparing 2020 with 2019 expenditures, the most significant variances were increases in payroll costs due to funding requirements.

Comparative data for the District's fund balances of its Governmental Funds are presented in the following table to assist analysis:

### Summary of the District's Fund Balances

	GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS		AMOUNT OF CHANGE
	AUGUST 31,		
	2020	2019	
General fund	\$ 5 108 270	\$ 4 109 148	\$ 999 122
Food service fund	-	4 843	(4 843)
TOTAL - GOVERNMENTAL	\$ 5 108 270	\$ 4 113 991	\$ 994 279

## Budgetary Highlights

Over the course of the year, the District revised its budget several times. After these adjustments, actual expenditures for the General Fund were \$28,613 over final budget amounts. See note budgetary comparison schedules for a listing of expenditures over budgeted amounts.

Resources available were \$437,865 under the final budgeted amount.

Expenditures for the Cafeteria Fund were \$5,764 over the budgeted amount.

## Capital Assets and Debt Administration

### Capital Assets

At August 31, 2020, the District has invested approximately \$11.7 million in a broad range of capital assets, including land, equipment, buildings, and vehicles.

#### Summary of the District's Capital Assets

	GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES		AMOUNT OF CHANGE
	AUGUST 31,		
	2020	2019	
Land	\$ 390 420	\$ 237 208	\$ 153 212
Building and improvements	8 507 619	8 065 105	442 514
Equipment	2 033 443	1 972 959	60 484
Vehicles	792 289	1 067 837	(275 548)
SUBTOTAL	11 723 771	11 343 109	380 662
Less accumulated depreciation	(5 772 348)	(5 693 112)	(79 236)
NET CAPITAL ASSETS	\$ 5 951 423	\$ 5 649 997	\$ 301 426

During the current year, the District purchased one new passenger van. During the prior year, the District purchased additional rent property and replaced the roof on the high school building.

### Long Term Debt

At year-end the District had approximately \$2.2 million in debt outstanding. There have been no plans made to obtain additional long-term borrowing. No changes have occurred in credit ratings or interest rates on existing bonds.

Debt transactions are summarized as follows:

#### Summary of the District's Debt

	AUGUST 31,	
	2020	2019
Balance of debt, beginning of year	\$ 2 501 316	\$ 2 790 265
Principal payments on bonds	(285 000)	(275 000)
Principal payments on bus notes	-	(28 160)
Amortization of bond premium and discount	14 211	14 211
BALANCE OF DEBT, END OF YEAR	\$ 2 230 527	\$ 2 501 316

Interest expenses totaled \$105,065 for fiscal 2020 and \$71,344 for fiscal 2019. More detailed information about the District's debt is presented in the notes to the financial statements.

### Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates

Several indicators were taken into account when adopting the General Fund budget for the 2020 - 2021 fiscal year. Budgeted revenues for the 2021 fiscal year are \$6,767,921 while previous year revenues were originally budgeted at \$8,017,789. The decrease in budgeted revenues anticipates decreased property tax payments due to a decrease in taxable values.

General Fund expenditures are budgeted for the 2020 - 2021 fiscal year at \$5,806,659 compared to the original budgeted amount of \$6,023,994 for the prior year. The major decrease to expenditures is in the area of maintenance costs for repairs and upgrades.

If these estimates are realized, the District's budgetary General Fund balance is expected to be approximately \$961,262 higher than the August 31, 2020 balance.

### Contacting the District's Financial Management

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and investors and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to demonstrate the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's Business Services Department.

## BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT A-1

DATA CONTROL CODES		1 GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES
	ASSETS	
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 4 772 252
1120	Current investments	451 026
1225	Property taxes receivable (net)	475 007
1240	Due from other governments	270 210
1410	Unearned expenditures	72 966
	Capital Assets:	
1510	Land	390 420
1520	Buildings, net	4 837 596
1530	Furniture and equipment, net	723 407
1000	TOTAL ASSETS	11 992 884
	DEFERRED OUTFLOWS	
1700	Deferred outflow - Pension	635 111
1700	Deferred outflow - OPEB	241 033
1000a	TOTAL ASSETS AND DEFERRED OUTFLOWS	12 869 028
	LIABILITIES	
2110	Accounts payable	34 254
2160	Accrued wages payable	192 821
2516	Discount on bond issue	(99 473)
2200	Other accrued expense	15 673
2501	Due within one year	305 000
	Noncurrent Liabilities:	
2502	Due in more than one year	2 025 000
2540	Net pension liability	1 138 124
2545	Net OPEB liability	2 061 635
2000	TOTAL LIABILITIES	5 673 034
	DEFERRED INFLOWS	
2600	Deferred inflows - Pension	300 472
2600	Deferred inflows - OPEB	1 147 937
2600	Unavailable revenue	55 344
2000	TOTAL LIABILITIES AND DEFERRED INFLOWS	7 716 787
	NET POSITION	
3200	Net investment in capital assets	3 621 423
3900	Unrestricted	2 070 818
3000	TOTAL NET POSITION	\$ 5 692 241

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT B-1

DATA CONTROL CODES	FUNCTIONS/PROGRAMS	1 EXPENSES	3 PROGRAM REVENUES CHARGES FOR SERVICES	4 OPERATING GRANTS AND CONTRIBUTIONS	NET (EXPENSE) REVENUE AND CHANGES IN NET POSITION GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES
	Governmental Activities:				
11	Instruction	\$ 3 828 983	\$ -	789 292	(3 039 691)
12	Instruction resources and media services	36 382	-	1 930	(34 452)
13	Curriculum and staff development	2 700	-	2 700	-
21	Instructional leadership	19 190	-	5 788	(13 402)
23	School leadership	320 965	-	25 942	(295 023)
31	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	107 711	-	16 921	(90 790)
33	Health services	103 602	-	21 736	(81 866)
34	Student transportation	331 772	-	17 921	(313 851)
35	Food services	355 864	21 475	260 184	(74 205)
36	Cocurricular/extracurricular activities	164 638	5 241	4 217	(155 180)
41	General administration	458 778	-	28 944	(429 834)
51	Facilities maintenance and operations	598 339	-	49 151	(549 188)
52	Security and monitoring services	7 653	-	537	(7 116)
53	Data processing services	218 125	-	9 854	(208 271)
72	Interest on long-term debt	119 276	-	-	(119 276)
73	Bond issuance costs and fees	250	-	-	(250)
81	Capital outlay	198 086	-	-	(198 086)
93	Payments related to shared services arrangements	106 038	-	-	(106 038)
99	Other intergovernmental charges	147 387	-	-	(147 387)
TG	TOTAL GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES	<u>\$ 7 125 739</u>	<u>\$ 26 716</u>	<u>\$ 1 235 117</u>	<u>(5 863 906)</u>
	General Revenues:				
MT	Property taxes, levied for general purposes				6 848 637
GC	Grants and contributions not restricted to specific programs				654 854
IE	Investment earnings				13 478
MI	Miscellaneous				10 038
TR	TOTAL GENERAL REVENUES				<u>7 527 007</u>
CN	CHANGE IN NET POSITION				1 663 101
NB	Net position - Beginning				4 029 140
NE	NET POSITION - ENDING				<u>\$ 5 692 241</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BALANCE SHEET - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT C-1

DATA CONTROL CODES		10 GENERAL FUND	OTHER GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS	98 TOTAL GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
	<b>ASSETS</b>			
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 4 755 484	\$ 16 768	\$ 4 772 252
1120	Current investments	451 026	-	451 026
1225	Taxes receivable, net	475 007	-	475 007
1240	Due from other governments	186 550	83 660	270 210
1260	Due from other funds	59 584	-	59 584
1410	Deferred expenditures	72 966	-	72 966
1000	TOTAL ASSETS	<u>\$ 6 000 617</u>	<u>\$ 100 428</u>	<u>\$ 6 101 045</u>
	<b>LIABILITIES</b>			
	Current Liabilities:			
2110	Accounts payable	\$ 24 657	\$ 9 597	\$ 34 254
2160	Accrued wages payable	163 621	29 200	192 821
2170	Due to other funds	-	59 584	59 584
2200	Other accrued expense	13 626	2 047	15 673
2000	TOTAL LIABILITIES	<u>201 904</u>	<u>100 428</u>	<u>302 332</u>
	<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS</b>			
2600	Unavailable revenue	690 443	-	690 443
	TOTAL LIABILITIES AND DEFERRED INFLOWS	<u>892 347</u>	<u>100 428</u>	<u>992 775</u>
	<b>FUND BALANCES</b>			
	Nonspendable Fund Balances:			
3430	Prepaid expenditures	72 966	-	72 966
	Committed Fund Balances:			
3510	Committed for construction	1 600 000	-	1 600 000
3600	Unassigned	3 435 304	-	3 435 304
3000	TOTAL FUND BALANCE	<u>5 108 270</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>5 108 270</u>
4000	TOTAL LIABILITIES, DEFERRED INFLOWS AND FUND BALANCES	<u>\$ 6 000 617</u>	<u>\$ 100 428</u>	<u>\$ 6 101 045</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 BALANCE SHEET TO THE STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
 August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT C-1R

TOTAL FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS (EXHIBIT C-1)	\$ 5 108 270
Amounts Reported for Governmental Activities in the Statement of Net Position are Different Because:	
Capital assets used in governmental activities are not reported in the funds.	5 951 423
Property taxes receivable unavailable to pay for current period expenditures are recorded as unavailable in the funds.	635 099
Payables for bond principal which are not due in the current period are not reported in the funds.	(2 330 000)
Premiums and discounts on bonds payable are not reported in the funds.	99 473
Recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability and related deferred inflows and outflows is not reported in the funds.	(803 485)
Recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability and related deferred inflows and outflows is not reported in the funds.	<u>(2 968 539)</u>
TOTAL NET POSITION - GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES (EXHIBIT A-1)	<u>\$ 5 692 241</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES  
AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES - GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT C-2

DATA CONTROL CODES		10 GENERAL FUND	OTHER GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS	98 TOTAL GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
	Revenues:			
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 6 669 317	\$ 21 475	\$ 6 690 792
5800	State program revenues	605 035	128 755	733 790
5900	Federal program revenues	305 572	447 923	753 495
5020	TOTAL REVENUES	<u>7 579 924</u>	<u>598 153</u>	<u>8 178 077</u>
	Expenditures:			
	Current:			
0011	Instruction	2 956 994	279 233	3 236 227
0012	Instructional resources and media services	33 918	-	33 918
0013	Curriculum and staff development	-	2 700	2 700
0021	Instructional leadership	13 402	5 788	19 190
0023	School leadership	288 063	800	288 863
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	86 106	-	86 106
0033	Health services	81 257	21 736	102 993
0034	Student transportation	251 731	-	251 731
0035	Food service	-	328 374	328 374
0036	Curricular and extracurricular activities	135 339	-	135 339
0041	General administration	420 719	-	420 719
0051	Facilities maintenance and operations	571 771	25 000	596 771
0052	Security and monitoring services	6 967	-	6 967
0053	Data processing services	205 544	-	205 544
0071	Principal on long-term debt	285 000	-	285 000
0072	Interest on long-term debt	105 065	-	105 065
0073	Bond issuance costs and fees	250	-	250
0081	Capital outlay	824 616	-	824 616
0093	Payments to shared service arrangements	106 038	-	106 038
0099	Other intergovernmental charges	147 387	-	147 387
6030	TOTAL EXPENDITURES	<u>6 520 167</u>	<u>663 631</u>	<u>7 183 798</u>
1100	EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES OVER (UNDER) EXPENDITURES	<u>1 059 757</u>	<u>(65 478)</u>	<u>994 279</u>
	Other Financing Sources (Uses):			
7911	Other financing sources	-	60 635	60 635
8911	Transfers out	(60 635)	-	(60 635)
7080	TOTAL OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)	<u>(60 635)</u>	<u>60 635</u>	<u>-</u>
1200	NET CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES	999 122	(4 843)	994 279
0100	Fund balances - Beginning	4 109 148	4 843	4 113 991
3000	FUND BALANCES - ENDING	<u>\$ 5 108 270</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5 108 270</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.



BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 RECONCILIATION OF THE STATEMENT OF REVENUES,  
 EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES OF  
 GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
 For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT C-3

NET CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES - TOTAL GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS	\$ 994 279
Amounts Reported for Governmental Activities in the Statement of Activities ("SOA") are Different Because:	
Capital outlays are not reported as expenses in the SOA.	674 085
The depreciation of capital assets used in governmental activities is not reported in the funds.	(372 659)
Certain property tax revenues are deferred as unearned in the funds. This is the change in these amounts this year.	208 077
Repayment of bond principal is an expenditure in the funds but is not an expense in the SOA.	285 000
Bond discounts are reported in the funds but not in the SOA.	(14 211)
Pension expense relating to GASB 68 is recorded in the SOA but not in the funds.	(126 128)
Expense relating to GASB 75 for the OPEB plan is recorded in the SOA but not in the funds.	<u>14 658</u>
CHANGE IN NET POSITION OF GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES - STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES	\$ <u><u>1 663 101</u></u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET ASSETS  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT E-1

DATA CONTROL CODES		AGENCY FUND
	ASSETS	
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 79 383
1000	TOTAL ASSETS	\$ <u>79 383</u>
	LIABILITIES	
	Current Liabilities:	
2190	Due to student groups	\$ 79 383
2000	TOTAL LIABILITIES	<u>79 383</u>
	NET POSITION	-
3000	TOTAL NET POSITION	\$ <u><u>-</u></u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of this statement.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
August 31, 2020

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

The basic financial statements of Broaddus Independent School District (the "District") have been prepared in conformity with accounting principles general accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP") applicable to governmental units in conjunction with the Texas Education Agency's Financial Accountability System Resource Guide ("Resource Guide"). The Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") is the accepted standard setting body for establishing governmental accounting and financial reporting principles.

A. The Reporting Entity

The Board of School Trustees ("Board"), a seven - member group, has governance responsibilities over all activities related to public elementary and secondary education within the jurisdiction of the District. The Board is elected by the public and has the exclusive power and duty to govern and oversee the management of the public schools of the District. All powers and duties not specifically delegated by statute to the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") or to the State Board of Education are reserved for the Board, and the TEA may not substitute its judgement for the lawful exercise of those powers and duties by the Board. The District receives funding from local, state and federal government sources and must comply with the requirements of those funding entities. However, the District is not included in any other governmental reporting entity and there are no component units included within the District's reporting entity.

B. Basis of Presentation, Basis of Accounting

Basis of Presentation:

Government-wide Financial Statements: The statement of net position and the statement of activities included the financial activities of the overall government, except for fiduciary activities. Eliminations have been made to minimize the double - counting of internal activities. Governmental activities generally are financed through taxes, intergovernmental revenues, and other nonexchange transactions.

The statement of activities presents a comparison between direct expenses and program revenues for each function of the District's governmental activities. Direct expenses are those that are specifically associated with a program or function and, therefore, are clearly identifiable to a particular function. The District does not allocate indirect expenses in the statement of activities. Program revenues include (a) fees, fines, and charges paid by the recipients of goods or services offered by the program and (b) grants and contributions that are restricted to meeting the operational or capital requirements of a particular program. Revenues that are not classified as a program revenues, including all taxes, are presented as general revenues.

Fund Financial Statements: The fund financial statements provide information about the District's funds, with separate statements presented for each fund category. The emphasis of fund financial statements is on major governmental funds, each displayed in a separate column. All remaining governmental funds are aggregated and reported as nonmajor funds.

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

General Fund: This is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources of the District, except those accounted for in another fund.

In addition, the District reports the following fund types:

Agency Funds: These funds are used to report student activity funds and other resources held in a purely custodial capacity (assets equal liabilities). Agency funds typically involve only the receipt, temporary investment, and remittance of fiduciary resources to individuals, private organizations, or other governments. Fiduciary funds are reported in the fiduciary fund financial statements. However, because their assets are held in a trustee or agent capacity and are therefore not available.

Measurement Focus, Basis of Accounting

Government-wide and fiduciary fund financial statements: These financial statements are reported using the *economic resources measurement focus*. They are reported using the accrual basis of accounting. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded at the time liabilities are incurred, regardless of when the related cash flows take place. Nonexchange transactions, in which the District gives (or receives) value without directly receiving (or giving) equal value in exchange, include property taxes, grants, entitlements, and donations. On an accrual basis, revenue from property taxes is recognized in the fiscal year for which the taxes are levied. Revenue from grants, entitlements, and donations is recognized in the fiscal year in which all eligibility requirements have been satisfied.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES - CONTINUED

Governmental fund financial statements: Governmental funds are reported using the *current financial resources measurement focus* and the *modified accrual basis of accounting*. Under this method, revenues are recognized when measurable and available. The District does not consider revenues collected after its year-end to be available in the current period. Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the susceptible - to - accrual concept. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available. Expenditures are recorded when the related fund liability is incurred, except for principal and interest on general long - term debt, claims and judgements, and compensated absences, which are recognized as expenditures to the extent they have matured. General capital assets acquisitions are reported as expenditures in governmental funds. Proceeds of general long-term debt and acquisitions under capital leases are reported as other financing sources.

When the District incurs an expenditure or expense for which both restricted and unrestricted resources may be used, it is the District's policy to use restricted resources first, then unrestricted resources.

C. Financial Statement Amounts

Property Taxes:

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas property tax code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 1 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all tax penalties and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available when they become due or past due and receivable within the current period.

Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General Fund are based upon historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature. The allowance for uncollectible tax receivable was \$118,752 at August 31, 2019.

Inventories and prepaid items:

The District records purchases of supplies as expenditures, utilizing the purchase method of accounting for inventory in accordance with the Resource Guide.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items.

Capital Assets:

Purchased or constructed capital assets are reported at cost or estimated historical cost. Donated fixed assets are recorded at their estimated fair value at the date of the donation. The cost of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets' lives are not capitalized. A capitalization threshold of \$5,000 is used.

Certain payments to vendors reflect costs applicable to future accounting periods and are recorded as prepaid items in both the government-wide and fund financial statements. The cost of prepaid items is recorded as expenditures/expenses when consumed rather than when purchased.

CAPITAL ASSET CLASSES	LIVES
Buildings and Improvements	50
Building Improvements	15-20
Vehicles	5-10
Equipment	5-10

Deferred Outflows/Inflows of Resources:

In addition to assets and liabilities, the statement of financial position (the government - wide statement of net position and governmental funds balance sheet) will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows and inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred outflows or inflows of resources*, represents a consumption of net position and/or fund balance that applies to one or more future period(s) and so will *not* be recognized as an inflow or outflow of resources (revenue or expense) until that time.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
August 31, 2020

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES - CONTINUED

Receivable and Payable Balances:

The District believes that sufficient detail of receivable and payable balances is provided in the financial statements to avoid the obscuring of significant components by aggregation. Therefore, no disclosure is provided which disaggregates those balances.

There are no significant receivables which are not scheduled for collection within one year of year end.

Interfund Activity:

Interfund activity results from loans, services provided, reimbursements or transfers between funds. Loans are reported as interfund receivables and payables as appropriate and are subject to elimination upon consolidation. Services provided, deemed to be at market or near market rates, are treated as revenues and expenditures or expenses. Reimbursements occur when one fund incurs a cost, charges the appropriate benefiting fund and reduces its related cost as a reimbursement. All other interfund transactions are treated as transfers. Transfers In and Transfers Out are netted and presented as a single "Transfers" line on the government - wide statement of activities. Similarly, interfund receivables and payables are netted and presented as a single "Internal Balances" line of the government - wide statement of net position.

Use of Estimates:

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP requires the use of management's estimates.

Data Control Codes:

The Data Control Codes appear in the rows and above the columns of certain financial statements. The TEA in the *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. Texas Education Agency requires the display these codes in the financial statements filed with TEA in order to ensure accuracy in building a statewide data base for policy development and funding plans.

Fund Balances - Governmental Funds

Fund balances of the governmental funds are classified as follows:

- Nonspendable fund balance - represents amounts that cannot be spent because they are either in spendable form (such as inventory or prepaid insurance) or legally required to remain intact (such as notes receivable or principal of a permanent fund).
- Restricted fund balance - represents amounts that are constrained by external parties, constitutional provisions or enabling legislation.
- Committed fund balance - represents amounts that can only be used for a specific purpose because of a formal action by the District's Board of Trustees. Committed amounts cannot be used for any other purpose unless the Board of Trustees removes those constraints by taking the same type of formal action. Committed fund balance amounts may be used for other purposes with appropriate due process by the Board of Trustees. Commitments are typically done through adoption and amendment of the budget. Committed fund balance amounts differ from restricted balances in that the constraints on their use do not come from outside parties, constitutional provisions, or enabling legislation.
- Assigned fund balance - represents amounts which the District intends to use for a specific purpose, but that do not meet the criteria to be classified as restricted or committed. Intent may be stipulated by the Board of Trustees or by an official or body to which the Board of Trustees delegates the authority. Specific amounts that are not restricted or committed in a special revenue, capital projects, debt service, or permanent fund are assigned for purposes in accordance with the nature of their fund type or the fund's primary purpose. Assignments within the general fund convey that the intended use of those amounts is for a specific purpose that is narrower than the general purposes of the District itself.
- Unassigned fund balance - represents amounts which are unconstrained in that they may be spent for any purpose. Only the general fund reports a positive unassigned fund balance. Other governmental funds might report a negative balance in this classification because of overspending for specific purposes for which amounts had been restricted, committed, or assigned.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

NOTE 1 - SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES - CONTINUED

Net Position Flow Assumption:

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted (e.g., restricted bond or grant proceeds) and unrestricted resources. In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted net position and unrestricted net position in the government - wide and proprietary fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted net position to have been depleted before unrestricted net position is applied.

Fund Balance Flow Assumptions:

Sometimes the District will fund outlays for a particular purpose from both restricted and unrestricted resources (the total of committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance). In order to calculate the amounts to report as restricted, committed, assigned, and unassigned fund balance in the governmental fund financial statements, a flow assumption must be made about the order in which the resources are considered to be applied. It is the District's policy to consider restricted fund balance to have been depleted before using any of the components of unrestricted fund balance. Further, when the components of unrestricted fund balance can be used for the same purpose, committed fund balance is depleted first, followed by assigned fund balance. Unassigned fund balance is applied last.

D. Pensions

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS' fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit term. Investments are reported at fair value.

E. Other Post-Employment Benefits

The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) TRS Care Plan has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net OPEB liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits, OPEB expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS Care's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. There are no investments as this is a pay-as-you-go plan and all cash is held in a cash account.

F. Subsequent Events

Management has evaluated subsequent events through January 11, 2021, the date the financial statements were available to be issued.

NOTE 2 - COMPLIANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY

A. Finance - Related Legal and Contractual Provisions

In accordance with GASB Statement No. 38, "Certain Financial Statement Note Disclosures" violations of finance related legal and contractual provisions, if any, are reported below, along with actions taken to address such violations:

VIOLATION	ACTION TAKEN
Expenditures in excess of budgeted amounts	Future expenditures will have budgeted appropriations prior to being expended

B. Deficit Fund Balance or Fund Net Position of Individual Funds

Following are funds having deficit fund balances or fund net position at year end, if any, along with remarks which address such deficits:

FUND NAME	DEFICIT AMOUNT	REMARKS
None reported	Not applicable	Not applicable

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

**NOTE 3 - DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS**

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust with the District's agent bank approved pledged securities in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day - to - day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance.

1. Cash Deposits:

At August 31, 2020, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (cash, certificates of deposit, and interest - bearing savings accounts included in temporary investments) was \$5,302,661 and bank balance was \$5,314,485. The District's cash deposits at August 31, 2020 and during the year then ended, were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name.

2. Investments:

The District is required by Government Code Chapter 2256, The Public Funds Investment Act, to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar - weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, and (9) bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

The Public Fund Investment Act ("Act") requires an annual audit of investment practices. Audit procedures in this area conducted as a part of the audit of the basic financial statements disclosed that in the areas of investment practices, management reports and establishment of appropriate policies, the District did adhere to the requirements of the Act. Additionally, investment practices of the District were in accordance with local policies.

The Act determines the types of investments which are allowable for the District. These include, with certain restrictions, (1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas, (2) certificates of deposit, (3) certain municipal securities, (4) securities lending program, (5) repurchase agreements, (6) bankers acceptances, (7) mutual funds, (8) investment pools, (9) guaranteed investment contracts, and (10) commercial paper.

The District's investment at August 31, 2020 is shown below.

INVESTMENT OR INVESTMENT TYPE	MATURITY	FAIR VALUE
Certificate of deposits	<1 year	\$ 451 026
TOTAL INVESTMENTS		\$ 451 026

Analysis of Specific Deposit and Investment Risks:

GASB Statement No. 40 requires a determination as to whether the District was exposed to the following specific investment risks at year end and if so, the reporting of a certain related disclosures:

*Credit Risk* - Credit risk is the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations. The ratings of securities by nationally recognized rating agencies are designed to give an indication of credit risk. At year end, the District was not significantly exposed to credit risk.

*Custodial Credit Risk* - Deposits are exposed to custodial credit risk if they are not covered by depository insurance and the deposits are uncollateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution, or collateralized with securities held by the pledging financial institution's trust department or agent but not in the District's name.

Investment securities are exposed to custodial credit risk if the securities are uninsured, are not registered in the name of the government, and are held by either the counterparty or the counterparty's trust department or agent but not in the District's name. At year end, the District was not exposed to custodial credit risk.

*Concentration of Credit Risk* - The risk is the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of a government's investment in a single issuer. At year end, the District was not exposed to concentration of a credit risk.

*Interest Rate Risk* - This is the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to interest rate risk.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

NOTE 3 - DEPOSITS AND INVESTMENTS - CONTINUED

*Foreign Currency Risk* - This is the risk that exchange rates will adversely affect the fair value of an investment. At year end, the District was not exposed to foreign currency risk.

Investment Accounting Policy

The District's general policy is to report money market investments and short - term participating interest-earning investment contracts at amortized cost and to report nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts using a cost-based measure. However, if the fair value of an investment is significantly affected by the impairment of the credit standing of the issuer or by other factors, it is reported at fair value. All other investments are reported at fair value unless a legal contract exists which guarantees a higher value. The term "short-term" refers to investments which have a remaining term of one year or less at time of purchase. The term "nonparticipating" means that the investment's value does not vary with market interest rate changes. Nonnegotiable certificates of deposit are examples of nonparticipating interest-earning investment contracts.

NOTE 4 - CAPITAL ASSETS

Capital asset activity for the year end August 31, 2020, were as follows:

GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES	BEGINNING BALANCES	INCREASES	DECREASES	ENDING BALANCES
Capital Assets Not Being Depreciated:				
Land	\$ 237 208	\$ 153 212	\$ -	\$ 390 420
TOTAL CAPITAL ASSETS NOT BEING DEPRECIATED	<u>237 208</u>	<u>153 212</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>390 420</u>
Capital Assets Being Depreciated:				
Buildings and improvements	8 065 105	442 514	-	8 507 619
Equipment	1 972 959	78 359	(17 875)	2 033 443
Vehicles	1 067 837	-	(275 548)	792 289
TOTAL CAPITAL ASSETS BEING DEPRECIATED	<u>11 105 901</u>	<u>520 873</u>	<u>(293 423)</u>	<u>11 333 351</u>
Less Accumulated Depreciation for:				
Buildings and improvements	3 496 137	173 886	-	3 670 023
Equipment	1 522 751	142 484	(17 875)	1 647 360
Vehicles	674 224	56 289	(275 548)	454 965
TOTAL ACCUMULATED DEPRECIATION	<u>5 693 112</u>	<u>372 659</u>	<u>(293 423)</u>	<u>5 772 348</u>
TOTAL CAPITAL ASSETS BEING DEPRECIATED, NET	<u>5 412 789</u>	<u>148 214</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>5 561 003</u>
GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES AND CAPITAL ASSETS, NET	<u>\$ 5 649 997</u>	<u>\$ 301 426</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5 951 423</u>

Depreciation was charged to functions as follows:

Instruction	\$ 268 054
Health services	609
Student transportation	57 159
Food services	3 533
Extracurricular activities	23 915
General administration	1 103
Plant maintenance and operations	18 286
TOTAL	<u>\$ 372 659</u>

NOTE 5 - INTERFUND BALANCES AND ACTIVITIES

*Due to and from other funds*

The District's interfund balances at August 31, 2020 consisted of the following:

DUE TO	DUE FROM	AMOUNT	REASON
General Fund	Other Government Funds	\$ 59 584	Short-term loan
	TOTAL	<u>\$ 59 584</u>	

*Transfer to and from other funds*

Transfers to and from other funds at August 31, 2020, consisted of the following:

TRANSFERS FROM	TRANSFERS TO	AMOUNT	REASON
General fund	Other Government Funds	\$ 60 635	Supplement other funds sources
	TOTAL	<u>\$ 60 635</u>	



BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
August 31, 2020

**NOTE 6 - LONG - TERM OBLIGATIONS**

Long-term Obligation Activity

Long-term obligation includes debt and other long-term liabilities. Changes in long-term obligations for the year ended August 31, 2020, are as follows:

	BEGINNING BALANCE	INCREASES	DECREASES	ENDING BALANCE	AMOUNTS DUE WITHIN ONE YEAR
Governmental Activities:					
General obligation bonds	\$ 2 615 000	\$ -	\$ (285 000)	\$ 2 330 000	\$ 305 000
Bond premium (discount)	(113 684)	-	14 211	(99 474)	-
TOTAL GOVERNMENT ACTIVITIES	<u>\$ 2 501 316</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ (270 789)</u>	<u>\$ 2 230 526</u>	<u>\$ 305 000</u>

Long - term debt consisted of the following individual issues:

	INTEREST RATES	ORIGINAL ISSUE	MATURITY	BALANCE
Governmental Activities:				
2011 maintenance tax refunding bonds	1.25 - 4.30	\$ 4 575 000	2027	\$ 2 330 000

Debt Service Requirements

Debt service requirements on long-term debt at August 31, 2020, are as follows:

YEAR ENDING AUGUST 31	GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES		
	PRINCIPAL	INTEREST	TOTAL
2021	\$ 305 000	\$ 94 840	\$ 399 840
2022	305 000	83 555	388 555
2023	320 000	71 660	391 660
2024	325 000	58 860	383 860
2025	340 000	45 535	385 535
2026 - 2028	735 000	47 550	782 550
TOTALS	<u>\$ 2 330 000</u>	<u>\$ 402 000</u>	<u>\$ 2 732 000</u>

**NOTE 7 - COMMITMENTS UNDER NONCAPITALIZED LEASES**

Commitments under operating (noncapitalized) lease agreements for facilities and equipment provide for minimum future rental payments as of August 31, 2020, as follows:

YEAR ENDING AUGUST 31	
2021	\$ 4 539
TOTAL MINIMUM RENTALS	<u>\$ 4 539</u>
RENTAL EXPENDITURES IN 2020	<u>\$ 14 795</u>

**NOTE 8 - RISK MANAGEMENT**

The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts, theft, damage or destruction of assets, errors and omissions, injuries to employees, and natural disasters. During fiscal year 2020, the District purchased commercial insurance to cover general liabilities. There were no significant reductions in coverage in the past fiscal year and there were no settlements exceeding insurance coverage for each of the past three fiscal years.

The District participated with other school districts in the TASB Risk Management Fund Workers Compensation Program (the Fund), which is a public entity risk pool currently operating as a common risk management and insurance program. The District pays an annual premium to the Fund for its workers compensation insurance coverage. The Agreement for Formation of the Fund provides that the Fund will be self - sustaining through member premiums and will reinsure through commercial companies for catastrophic claim.

**NOTE 9 - PENSION PLAN**

A. Plan Description

The District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

NOTE 9 - PENSION PLAN - CONTINUED

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

B. Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position

Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592.

C. Benefits Provided

TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description in (A) above.

D. Contributions

Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83rd Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates. The 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2019 and 2020.

	CONTRIBUTION RATES	
	2019	2020
Member	7.7%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
Employer Contributions - 2020		\$ 1 749 462
Member Contributions - 2020		\$ 1 138 124
NECE On-behalf Contributions - 2019		\$ 642 822

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State is the employer for senior colleges, medical schools and state agencies including TRS. In each respective role, the State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education and junior colleges, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers (public school, junior college, other entities or the State of Texas as the employer for senior universities and medical schools) are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment.
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources, a privately sponsored source, from non-educational and general, or local funds.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
August 31, 2020

NOTE 9 - PENSION PLAN - CONTINUED

- When the employing district is a public junior college or junior college district, the employer shall contribute to the retirement system an amount equal to 50% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System, the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district or charter school does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

E. Actuarial Assumptions

The total pension liability in the August 31, 2019 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2019
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	7.25%
Long-term Expected Investment Rate of Return	7.25%
Inflation	2.30%
Salary Increases	3.05% to 9.05% including inflation
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad Hoc Post-Employment Benefit Changes	None

F. Discount Rate

The single discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 7.25%. The single discount rate was based on the expected rate of return on pension plan investments of 7.25% and a municipal bond rate of 3.69%. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was sufficient to finance the benefit payments until the year 2069. As a result, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to projected benefit payments through the year 2069, and the municipal bond rate was applied to all benefit payments after that date. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of arithmetic real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2019 are summarized below:

ASSET CLASS	TARGET ALLOCATION*	LONG-TERM EXPECTED ARITHMETIC REAL RATE OF RETURN	EXPECTED CONTRIBUTION TO LONG-TERM PORTFOLIO RETURNS**
<b>Global Equity</b>			
U.S.	18%	5.70%	1.04%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	6.90%	0.90%
Emerging Markets	9%	8.95%	0.80%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.53%	0.14%
Private Equity	13%	10.18%	1.32%
<b>Stable Value</b>			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	1.11%	0.12%
Absolute Return	- %	- %	- %
Stable Value Hedge Funds	4%	3.09%	0.12%
Cash	1%	(0.30)%	- %
<b>Real Return</b>			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.70%	0.02%
Real Assets	16%	5.21%	0.73%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	7.48%	0.37%
Commodities	- %	- %	- %
<b>Risk Parity</b>			
Risk Parity	5%	3.70%	0.18%
Inflation Expectation			2.30%
Volatility Drag**			(0.79)%
<b>Total</b>	<u>100%</u>		<u>7.25%</u>

\* Target allocations are based on the FY2016 policy model.

\*\* The Expected Contribution to Long-Term Portfolio Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between arithmetic and geometric mean returns.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
August 31, 2020

NOTE 9 - PENSION PLAN - CONTINUED

For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2019, the annual money-weighted rate of return on pension plan investments was 7.25 percent. The annual money-weighted rate of return expresses investment performance, net of investment expense, adjusted for the changing amounts actually invested.

G. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis

The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (7.25%) in measuring the Net Pension Liability.

	1% DECREASE IN DISCOUNT RATE (6.25%)	DISCOUNT RATE (7.25%)	1% INCREASE IN DISCOUNT RATE (8.25%)
District proportionate share of the net pension liability	\$ 1 749 462	\$ 1 138 124	\$ 642 822

H. Pension Liabilities, Pension Expenses and Deferred Outflows and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions

At August 31, 2020, the District reported a liability of \$1,138,124 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 1 138 124
State's proportionate share of the net pension liability associated with the District	<u>2 103 848</u>
TOTAL	<u>\$ 3 241 972</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2019 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The District's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the District's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2018 thru August 31, 2019.

At August 31, 2019 the District's proportion of the collective net pension liability was 0.0022%, the same as August 31, 2018.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation** - The following changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

The total pension liability as of August 31, 2019 was developed using a roll-forward method from the August 31, 2018 valuation.

Demographic assumptions including post-retirement mortality, termination rates, and rates of retirement were updated based on the experience study performed for TRS for the period ending August 31, 2018.

Economic assumptions including rates of salary increase for individual participants was updated based on the same experience study.

The discount rate changed from 6.907 percent as of August 31, 2018 to 7.25 percent as of August 31, 2019.

With the enactment of SB 3 by the 2019 Legislature, an assumption has been made about how this legislation would impact future salaries. We have assumed that eligible active members would each receive a \$2,700 increase in fiscal year 2020. This is in addition to the salary increase expected based on the actuarial assumptions.

For the year ended August 31, 2020, the District recognized pension expense of \$330,485 and revenue of \$330,485 for support provided by the State.

At August 31, 2020, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources: (The amounts shown below will be the cumulative layers from the current and prior years combined.)

	DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES	DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 4 781	\$ 39 517
Changes in actuarial assumptions	353 102	145 918
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	68 424	56 996
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	101 633	58 041
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	<u>107 171</u>	<u>-</u>
TOTAL	<u>\$ 635 111</u>	<u>\$ 300 472</u>

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

NOTE 9 - PENSION PLAN - CONTINUED

The net amounts of the District's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31,	PENSION EXPENSE AMOUNT
2021	\$ 55 527
2022	\$ 43 753
2023	\$ 69 233
2024	\$ 59 893
2025	\$ 10 150
Thereafter	\$ (11 088)

NOTE 10 - DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS

**A. Plan Description**

The District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care). It is a multiple-employer, cost-sharing defined Other Post-Employment Benefit (OPEB) plan that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered through a trust by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) Board of Trustees. It is established and administered in accordance with the Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575.

**B. OPEB Plan Fiduciary Net Position**

Detail information about the TRS-Care's fiduciary net position is available in the separately-issued TRS Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at <http://www.trs.state.tx.us/about/documents/cafr.pdf#CAFR>; by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701-2698; or by calling 512.542.6592.

**C. Benefits Provided**

TRS-Care provides a basic health insurance coverage (TRS-Care 1), at no cost to all retirees from public schools, charter schools, regional education service centers and other educational districts who are members of the TRS pension plan. Optional dependent coverage is available for an additional fee.

Eligible retirees and their dependents not enrolled in Medicare may pay premiums to participate in one of two optional insurance plans with more comprehensive benefits (TRS-Care 2 and TRS-Care 3). Eligible retirees and dependents enrolled in Medicare may elect to participate in one of the two Medicare health plans for an additional fee. To qualify for TRS-Care coverage, a retiree must have at least 10 years of service credit in the TRS pension system. The Board of Trustees is granted the authority to establish basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants as well as to amend benefit terms as needed under Chapter 1575.052. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs.

The premium rates for the optional health insurance are based on years of service of the member. The schedule below shows the monthly rates for a retiree with and without Medicare coverage.

<b>TRS-Care Monthly for Retirees</b>			
January 1, 2019 - December 31, 2019			
		<b>Medicare</b>	<b>Non-Medicare</b>
Retiree*	\$	135	\$ 200
Retiree and Spouse		529	689
Retiree* and Children		468	408
Retiree and Family		1 020	999

\* or surviving spouse

**D. Contributions**

Contribution rates for the TRS-Care plan are established in state statute by the Texas Legislature, and there is no continuing obligation to provide benefits beyond each fiscal year. The TRS-Care plan is currently funded on a pay-as-you-go basis and is subject to change based on available funding. Funding for TRS-Care is provided by retiree premium contributions and contributions from the state, active employees, and school districts based upon public school district payroll. The TRS Board of trustees does not have the authority to set or amend contribution rates.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

**NOTE 10 - DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS - CONTINUED**

Texas Insurance Code, section 1575.202 establishes the state's contribution rate which is 1.25% of the employee's salary. Section 1575.203 establishes the active employee's rate which is 0.75% of pay. Section 1575.204 establishes an employer contribution rate of not less than 0.25% or not more than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public. The actual employer contribution rate is prescribed by the Legislature in the General Appropriations Act. The following table shows contributions to the TRS-Care plan by type of contributor.

	<u>Contribution Rates</u>	
	2019	2020
Active Employee	0.65%	0.65%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	1.25%	1.25%
Employers	0.75%	0.75%
Federal/private Funding remitted by Employers	1.25%	1.25%
Employer Contributions - 2020	\$ 25 110	
Member Contributions - 2020	\$ 20 988	
NECE On-behalf Contributions - 2019	\$ 41 110	

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there is an additional surcharge all TRS employers are subject to (*regardless of whether or not they participate in the TRS Care OPEB program*). When employers hire a TRS retiree, they are required to pay to TRS Care, a monthly surcharge of \$535 per retiree.

TRS-Care received supplemental appropriations from the State of Texas as the Non-Employer Contributing Entity in the amount of \$73.6 million in fiscal year 2019.

**E. Actuarial Assumptions**

The total OPEB liability in the August 31, 2019 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

**Actuarial Methods and Assumptions:**

<b>Valuation Date</b>	August 31, 2019
<b>Methods and Assumptions:</b>	
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Inflation	2.30%
Single Discount Rate	2.63% as of August 31, 2019
Demographic Assumptions	Based on the experience study performed for the Teachers Retirement System of Texas of the period ending August 31, 2017.
Mortality Assumption	The active mortality rates were based on 90% of the RP-2014 Employee Mortality Tables for males and females, with full generational mortality using Scale BB. The post-retirement mortality rates for healthy lives were based on the 2018 TRS of Texas Healthy Pensioner Mortality Tables, with full generational projection, the ultimate improvement rates from the most recently published projection scale ("U-MP").
Healthcare Trend Rates	Initial medical trend rates of 107.74% and 9.00% for Medicare retirees and initial medical trend rate of 6.75% for non-Medicare retirees. Initial prescription drug trend rate of 11.00% for all retirees. The first year medical trend for Medicare retirees (107.74%) reflects the anticipated return of the Health Insurer Fee (HIF) in 2020.
Election Rates	Initial trend rates decrease to an ultimate trend rate of 4.50% over a period of 9 years.
Aging Factors	Normal Retirement: 70% participation prior to age 65 and 75% participation after age 65
Expenses	Based on plan specific experience.
	Third party administrative expenses related to the delivery of health care benefits are included in the age-adjusted claims costs.

The following assumptions and other inputs used for members of TRS-Care are identical to the assumptions used in the August 31, 2019 TRS pension actuarial valuation:

Rates of Mortality	General Inflation
Rates of Retirement	Wage Inflation
Rates of Termination	Expected Payroll Growth
Rates of Disability Incidence	

**F. Discount Rate**

A single discount rate of 2.63% was used to measure the total OPEB liability. There was a change of 0.27% in the discount rate since the previous year. Because the plan is essentially a "pay-as-you-go" plan, the single discount rate is equal to the prevailing municipal bond rate. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from active members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the OPEB plan's fiduciary net position was projected to *not be able to* make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the municipal bond rate was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total OPEB liability.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
 August 31, 2020

NOTE 10 - DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS - CONTINUED

**G. Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis**

The following schedule shows the impact of the Net OPEB Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (2.63%) in measuring the Net OPEB Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (1.63%)	Current Single Discount Rate (2.63%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (3.63%)
District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability	\$ 2 489 056	\$ 2 061 635	\$ 1 727 264

**H. OPEB Liabilities, OPEB Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to OPEBs**

At August 31, 2020, the District reported a liability of \$2,061,635 for its proportionate share of the TRS's Net OPEB Liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State OPEB support provide to the District. The amount recognized by the District as its proportionate share of the net OPEB liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net OPEB liability that was associated with the District were as follows:

District's proportionate share of the collective net OPEB liability	\$ 2 061 635
State's proportionate share that is associated with District	2 739 452
TOTAL	\$ 4 801 087

The Net OPEB Liability was measured as of August 31, 2019 and the Total OPEB Liability used to calculate the Net OPEB Liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the Net OPEB Liability was based on the employer's contributions to the OPEB plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2018 thru August 31, 2019.

At August 31, 2019, the employer's proportion of the collective Net OPEB Liability was 0.0044% which decreased 0.0001% from the proportion measured as of August 31, 2018.

The following schedule shows the impact of the Net OPEB Liability if a healthcare trend rate that is 1% less than and 1% greater than the assumed 4.5% rate is used.

	1% Decrease in Healthcare Trend Rate (3.5%)	Current Single Healthcare Trend Rate (4.5%)	1% Increase in Healthcare Trend Rate (5.5%)
District's proportionate share of the net OPEB liability	\$ 1 681 810	\$ 2 061 635	\$ 2 570 427

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation** - The following were changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability since the prior measurement period:

The following assumptions and other inputs which are specific to TRS-Care were updated from the prior year's report:

1. The discount rate changed from 3.69 percent as of August 31, 2018 to 2.63 percent as of August 31, 2019. This change increased the TOL.
2. The health care trend rates were reset to better reflect the plan's anticipated experience. This change increased the TOL.
3. The participation rate for pre-65 retirees was lowered from 70 percent to 65 percent. The participation rate for post-65 retirees was lowered from 75 percent to 50 percent. 25 percent of pre-65 retirees are assumed to discontinue their coverage at age 65. There was no lapse assumption in the prior valuation. These changes decreased the TOL.
4. The percentage of retirees who are assumed to have two-person coverage was lowered from 20 percent to 15 percent. In addition, the participation assumption for the surviving spouses of employees that die while actively employed was lowered from 20 percent to 10 percent. These changes decreased the TOL.
5. Change of Benefit Terms Since the Prior Measurement Date - There were no changes in benefit terms since the prior measurement date.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the Total OPEB liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2020, the District recognized OPEB expense of \$72,201 and revenue of \$72,201 for support provided by the State.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
August 31, 2020

NOTE 10 - DEFINED OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFIT PLANS - CONTINUED

At August 31, 2020, the District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to other post-employment benefits from the following resources:

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual economic experience	\$ 101 141	\$ 337 365
Changes in actuarial assumptions	114 508	554 529
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	268	45
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	6	255 998
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	25 110	-
TOTAL	\$ 241 033	\$ 1 147 937

The net amounts of the employer's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to OPEB will be recognized in OPEB expense as follows:

YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31,	OPEB EXPENSE AMOUNT
2021	\$ (149 172)
2022	\$ (149 172)
2023	\$ (149 244)
2024	\$ (149 287)
2025	\$ (149 275)
Thereafter	\$ (185 864)

The Medicare Modernization Act of 2003 (MMA) created an outpatient prescription drug benefit program (known as Medicare Part D) and a Retiree Drug Subsidy (RDS) program which were made available in 2006. The Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) is offering a Medicare Part D Plan and is participating in the Retiree Drug Subsidy plan for eligible TRS-Care participants. Under Medicare Part D and the RDS program, TRS-Care received payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. On-behalf payments must be recognized as equal revenues and expenditures/expenses by each reporting entity. The allocation of these on-behalf payments is based on the ratio of a reporting entity's covered payroll to the entire covered payroll reported by all participating reporting entities. TRS based this allocation percentage on the "completed" report submissions by reporting entities for the month of May. For the fiscal years ended August 31, 2020, 2019 and 2018, the subsidy payments received by TRS-Care on behalf of the District were \$14,958, \$9,811 and \$0-, respectively.

NOTE 11 - EMPLOYEE HEALTH CARE COVERAGE

During the year ended August 31, 2020, employees of the District were covered by a health insurance plan (the Plan). The District paid premiums of \$225 per month per employee to the Plan. Employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents.

NOTE 12 - COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

A. Contingencies

The District participates in grant programs which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Cost charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules and regulations governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying basic financial statements for such contingencies.

B. Litigation

No reporting litigation was pending against the District at August 31, 2020.



BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS - CONTINUED  
August 31, 2020

NOTE 13 - SHARED SERVICES ARRANGEMENTS

Shared Services Arrangement - Membership

The District participates in a shared services arrangement ("SSA") for special education services with the following school districts:

Member Districts
Broaddus ISD
Brookeland ISD
Hemphill ISD - Fiscal Agent
West Sabine ISD

The District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Hemphill ISD, nor does the District have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to the District. The fiscal agent manager is responsible for all financial activities of the SSA.

NOTE 14 - COVID-19 PANDEMIC IMPACT

A novel strain of coronavirus (COVID-19) was spread to the United States of America in January and February 2020. The World Health Organization declared the outbreak to constitute a pandemic. The COVID-19 outbreak is disrupting supply chains and affecting production and sales across a range of industries. The extent of the impact of COVID-19 on the District's operational and financial performance will depend on certain developments, including the duration and spread of the outbreak, impact on our students, employees and vendors all of which are uncertain and cannot be predicted. As of the date these financial statements are issued, COVID-19 had not materially affected results of operations in 2020. However, the impact of response efforts on future operations cannot be predicted.

#### REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

Required supplementary information includes financial information and disclosures required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, but not considered a part of the basic financial statements.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
GENERAL FUND SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES  
IN FUND BALANCES - BUDGETARY COMPARISON  
For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT G-1

DATA CONTROL CODES		ORIGINAL BUDGET	FINAL BUDGET	ACTUAL	VARIANCE WITH FINAL BUDGET POSITIVE (NEGATIVE)
	Revenues:				
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ 6 606 546	\$ 6 606 546	\$ 6 669 317	\$ 62 771
5800	State program revenues	1 116 243	1 116 243	605 035	(511 208)
5900	Federal program revenues	295 000	295 000	305 572	10 572
5020	TOTAL REVENUES	<u>8 017 789</u>	<u>8 017 789</u>	<u>7 579 924</u>	<u>(437 865)</u>
	Expenditures:				
	Current:				
0011	Instruction	2 776 118	2 975 341	2 956 994	18 347
0012	Instructional resources and media services	41 523	37 770	33 918	3 852
0021	Instructional leadership	12 602	13 402	13 402	-
0023	School leadership	275 524	286 766	288 063	(1 297)
0031	Guidance, counseling, and evaluation services	86 702	86 702	86 106	596
0033	Health services	83 545	84 984	81 257	3 727
0034	Student transportation	267 140	259 667	251 731	7 936
0036	Cocurricular/extracurricular activities	140 161	138 243	135 339	2 904
0041	General administration	409 823	422 915	420 719	2 196
0051	Plant maintenance and operations	589 180	570 599	571 771	(1 172)
0052	Security and monitoring services	2 400	8 853	6 967	1 886
0053	Data processing services	160 646	203 464	205 544	(2 080)
0071	Principal on long term debt	346 630	390 565	390 315	250
0081	Capital outlay	650 000	816 083	824 616	(8 533)
0093	Payments to fiscal agent or member dist. - SSA	74 000	106 038	106 038	-
0099	Other governmental charges	108 000	147 388	147 387	1
6030	TOTAL EXPENDITURES	<u>6 023 994</u>	<u>6 548 780</u>	<u>6 520 167</u>	<u>28 613</u>
1100	EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES OVER EXPENDITURES	<u>1 993 795</u>	<u>1 469 009</u>	<u>1 059 757</u>	<u>(409 252)</u>
	Other Financing Sources (Uses):				
8900	Other financing uses	-	-	(60 635)	(60 635)
	TOTAL OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(60 635)</u>	<u>(60 635)</u>
1200	NET CHANGE IN FUND BALANCES	1 993 795	1 469 009	999 122	(469 887)
0100	Fund balances - Beginning	<u>4 109 148</u>	<u>4 109 148</u>	<u>4 109 148</u>	<u>-</u>
3000	FUND BALANCES - ENDING	<u>\$ 6 102 943</u>	<u>\$ 5 578 157</u>	<u>\$ 5 108 270</u>	<u>\$ (469 887)</u>

See independent auditors' report.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM  
 LAST TEN FISCAL YEARS\*

EXHIBIT G-2

	2019	2018	2017	2016	2015	2014
District's proportion of the net pension liability (asset)	0.0022%	0.002%	0.002%	0.002%	0.002%	0.002%
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability (asset)	\$ 1 138 124	\$ 1 220 632	\$ 772 844	\$ 775 429	\$ 720 158	\$ 458 234
State's proportionate share of the net pension liability (asset) associated with the District	<u>2 103 848</u>	<u>2 387 241</u>	<u>1 425 400</u>	<u>1 752 769</u>	<u>1 729 993</u>	<u>1 324 923</u>
TOTAL	<u>\$ 3 241 972</u>	<u>\$ 3 607 873</u>	<u>\$ 2 198 244</u>	<u>\$ 2 528 198</u>	<u>\$ 2 450 151</u>	<u>\$ 1 783 157</u>
District's covered-employee payroll	\$ 2 645 872	\$ 2 612 959	\$ 2 556 542	\$ 2 572 370	\$ 2 489 685	\$ 2 465 959
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability (asset) as a percentage of its covered-employee payroll	43.02%	46.71%	30.23%	30.14%	28.93%	18.58%
Plan fiduciary net position as a percentage of the total pension liability	75.24%	73.74%	82.17%	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

\* This schedule is illustrate the requirement to show information for 10 years. However, until a full 10-year trend is compiled, this schedule provides the information only for those years for which information is available.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM  
 LAST TEN FISCAL YEARS\*

	2020	2019	2018	2017	2016	2015
Contractually required contribution	\$ 107 171	\$ 86 620	\$ 77 992	\$ 89 912	\$ 82 080	\$ 57 666
Contributions in relation to the contractually required contribution	<u>(107 171)</u>	<u>(86 620)</u>	<u>(77 992)</u>	<u>89 912</u>	<u>82 080</u>	<u>57 666</u>
CONTRIBUTION DEFICIENCY (EXCESS)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
District's covered-employee payroll	\$ 3 228 896	\$ 2 645 872	\$ 2 612 959	\$ 2 556 642	\$ 2 572 370	\$ 2 489 685
Contributions as a percentage of covered-employee payroll	3.32%	3.27%	2.98%	3.52%	3.19%	2.32%

\* This schedule is illustrate the requirement to show information for 10 years. However, until a full 10-year trend is compiled, this schedule provides the information only for those years for which information is available.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF OPEB LIABILITY  
AND DISTRICT'S OPEB CONTRIBUTIONS  
TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM  
LAST TEN FISCAL YEARS\*

EXHIBIT G-4

<b>District's Proportionate Share of Liability</b>	<b>2019</b>	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>
District's proportion of the OPEBL	0.0044%	0.0045%	0.0049%
District's proportionate share of the OPEBL	\$ 2 061 635	\$ 2 225 426	\$ 2 121 027
State share of the OPEBL associated with the District	<u>2 739 452</u>	<u>2 144 345</u>	<u>1 988 089</u>
TOTAL	<u>\$ 4 801 087</u>	<u>\$ 4 369 771</u>	<u>\$ 4 109 116</u>
District's covered-employee payroll*	\$ 2 645 872	\$ 2 612 959	\$ 2 556 542
<i>*Prior FY TRS Gross - September through August</i>			
Proportionate share/covered payroll	77.92%	85.17%	82.96%
Plan fiduciary net position/total OPEB liability	2.66%	1.57%	0.91%
<b>District Contributions</b>			
Contractually required contribution	\$ 25 110	\$ 21 014	\$ 21 154
Contributions to required contribution	<u>(25 110)</u>	<u>(21 014)</u>	<u>(21 154)</u>
CONTRIBUTION DEFICIENCY (EXCESS)	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>
Current fiscal year TRS gross	\$ 3 228 896	\$ 2 645 872	\$ 2 612 959
Contributions to covered payroll	0.78%	0.79%	0.81%

Information provided by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas.

\* This schedule is illustrate the requirement to show information for 10 years. However, until a full 10-year trend is compiled, this schedule provides the information only for those years for which information is available.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION  
For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

Budget

The official budget was prepared for adoption for all Governmental Fund Types. The budget was prepared in accordance with accounting practices generally accepted in the United States of America. The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data:

- Prior to August 21 of the preceding fiscal year, the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
- A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget after ten days' public notice of the meeting has been given
- Prior to the beginning of the fiscal year, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board.

Once a budget is approved, it can be amended at function and fund level only by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings.

Each amendment must have Board approval. Such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board and are not made after fiscal year end as required by law.

Each amendment is controlled by the budget coordinator at the revenue and expenditure function/object level. Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year end.

Encumbrances for goods or purchased services are documented by purchase orders or contracts. Under Texas law, appropriations lapse at August 31, and encumbrances outstanding at that time are to be either cancelled or appropriately provided for in the subsequent year's budget. There were no end-of-year outstanding encumbrances that provided for in the subsequent year's budget.

Defined Benefit Pension Plan and OPEB Plan

See Notes 9 and 10 for description of changes to provisions and assumptions underlying the Pension and OPEB plan.

COMBINING STATEMENTS AND BUDGET COMPARISONS  
AS SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

This supplementary information includes financial statements and schedules not required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board, nor a part of the basic financial statements, but are presented for purposes of additional analysis.



BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
 NONMAJOR SPECIAL REVENUE FUNDS  
 August 31, 2020

<u>DATA CONTRO CODES</u>		<u>211 ESEA TITLE I IMPROVING BASIC PROGRAMS</u>	<u>240 NATIONAL BREAKFAST AND LUNCH PROGRAM</u>	<u>255 ESEA TITLE II TRAINING AND RECRUITING</u>
	ASSETS			
1110	Cash and cash equivalents	\$ -	\$ 15 357	\$ 1 411
1240	Due from other governments	24 435	15 117	-
1000	TOTAL ASSETS	<u>\$ 24 435</u>	<u>\$ 30 474</u>	<u>\$ 1 411</u>
	LIABILITIES			
2110	Accounts payable	\$ -	\$ 9 597	\$ -
2160	Accrued wages payable	10 709	17 080	1 411
2170	Due to other funds	12 336	3 140	-
2200	Other accrued expense	1 390	657	-
2000	TOTAL LIABILITIES	<u>24 435</u>	<u>30 474</u>	<u>1 411</u>
4000	TOTAL LIABILITIES AND FUND BALANCES	<u>\$ 24 435</u>	<u>\$ 30 474</u>	<u>\$ 1 411</u>

See independent auditors' report.

270 ESEA, TITLE VI PART B, SUBPART 2 RURAL SCHOOL	289 TITLE IV AND HURRICANE RECOVERY	410 STATE TEXTBOOK FUND	429 SECURITY GRANT	TOTAL NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
\$ -	\$ 199	\$ 18 909	\$ 25 000	\$ 16 768
-	-	-	-	83 660
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 199</u>	<u>\$ 18 909</u>	<u>\$ 25 000</u>	<u>\$ 100 428</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 9 597
-	-	18 909	-	29 200
-	199	-	25 000	59 584
-	-	-	-	2 047
<u>-</u>	<u>199</u>	<u>18 909</u>	<u>25 000</u>	<u>100 428</u>
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 199</u>	<u>\$ 18 909</u>	<u>\$ 25 000</u>	<u>\$ 100 428</u>

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR SPECIAL REVENUE FUNDS  
 For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

DATA CONTROL CODES		211 ESEA TITLE I IMPROVING BASIC PROGRAMS	240 NATIONAL BREAKFAST AND LUNCH PROGRAM	255 ESEA TITLE II TRAINING AND RECRUITING
	Revenues:			
5700	Local and intermediate sources	\$ -	\$ 21 475	\$ -
5800	State program revenues	-	16 713	-
5900	Federal program revenues	176 069	224 708	22 536
5020	TOTAL REVENUES	<u>176 069</u>	<u>262 896</u>	<u>22 536</u>
	Expenditures:			
	Current:			
0011	Instruction	168 881	-	-
0013	Curriculum and staff development	2 700	-	-
0021	Instructional leadership	4 488	-	800
0023	School leadership	-	-	-
0033	Health services	-	-	21 736
0035	Food services	-	328 374	-
0051	Plant maintenance and operations	-	-	-
6030	TOTAL EXPENDITURES	<u>176 069</u>	<u>328 374</u>	<u>22 536</u>
1100	EXCESS (DEFICIENCY) OF REVENUES OVER (UNDER) EXPENDITURES	<u>-</u>	<u>(65 478)</u>	<u>-</u>
	Other Financing Sources (Uses):			
7900	Other financing sources	<u>-</u>	<u>60 635</u>	<u>-</u>
7080	TOTAL OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES)	<u>-</u>	<u>60 635</u>	<u>-</u>
1200	NET CHANGE IN FUND BALANCE	-	(4 843)	-
0100	Fund balances - Beginning	<u>-</u>	<u>4 843</u>	<u>-</u>
3000	FUND BALANCES - ENDING	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

See independent auditors' report.

270 ESEA, TITLE VI PART B, SUBPART 2 RURAL SCHOOL	289 TITLE IV AND HURRICANE RECOVERY	410 STATE TEXTBOOK FUND	429 SECURITY GRANT	TOTAL NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 21 475
-	-	87 042	25 000	128 755
<u>7 539</u>	<u>17 071</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>447 923</u>
<u>7 539</u>	<u>17 071</u>	<u>87 042</u>	<u>25 000</u>	<u>598 153</u>
7 039	16 271	87 042	-	279 233
-	-	-	-	2 700
500	-	-	-	5 788
-	800	-	-	800
-	-	-	-	21 736
-	-	-	-	328 374
-	-	-	25 000	25 000
<u>7 539</u>	<u>17 071</u>	<u>87 042</u>	<u>25 000</u>	<u>663 631</u>
-	-	-	-	(65 478)
-	-	-	-	60 635
-	-	-	-	60 635
-	-	-	-	(4 843)
-	-	-	-	4 843
<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>

#### OTHER SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION

This section includes financial information and disclosures not required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board and not considered a part of the basic financial statements. It may, however, include information which is required by other entities.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE  
 For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

LAST 10 YEARS	(1) TAX RATES		(2) ASSESSED/APPRaisal VALUE FOR SCHOOL TAX PURPOSES
	(1) MAINTENANCE	(2) DEBT SERVICE	
2011 and prior years	Various	Various	Various
2012	1.04	-	\$ 71 978 254
2013	1.17	-	\$ 123 617 961
2014	1.17	-	\$ 108 150 984
2015	1.17	-	\$ 111 696 616
2016	1.17	-	\$ 150 448 296
2017	1.17	-	\$ 131 434 655
2018	1.17	-	\$ 182 693 333
2019	1.17	-	\$ 318 086 154
2020 (School year under audit)	1.02	-	\$ 653 780 959
TOTALS			

See independent auditors' report.

(10) BEGINNING BALANCE 09/01	(20) CURRENT YEAR'S TOTAL LEVY	(31) MAINTENANCE COLLECTIONS	(40) ENTIRE YEAR'S ADJUSTMENTS	(50) ENDING BALANCE 08/31
\$ 142 550	\$ -	\$ 8 057	\$ 76	\$ 134 569
17 703	-	1 327	-	16 376
57 249	-	1 647	-	55 602
43 608	-	2 806	(28)	40 774
39 218	-	2 229	(2 641)	34 348
44 069	-	5 162	(2 351)	36 556
44 077	-	8 724	(311)	35 042
53 041	-	11 728	(484)	40 829
92 262	-	33 277	(2 011)	56 974
-	6 668 566	6 519 969	(5 908)	142 689
<u>\$ 533 777</u>	<u>\$ 6 668 566</u>	<u>\$ 6 594 926</u>	<u>\$ (13 658)</u>	<u>\$ 593 759</u>

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NATIONAL SCHOOL BREAKFAST AND LUNCH PROGRAM  
 BUDGETARY COMPARISON SCHEDULE  
 For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

EXHIBIT J-2

DATA CONTROL CODES	1 BUDGETED AMOUNTS		3	4
	ORIGINAL	FINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNTS	VARIANCE POSITIVE (NEGATIVE)
	Revenues:			
5700	\$ 55 000	\$ 55 000	\$ 21 475	\$ (33 525)
5800	13 855	13 855	16 713	2 858
5900	259 000	259 000	224 708	(34 292)
5020	<u>327 855</u>	<u>327 855</u>	<u>262 896</u>	<u>(64 959)</u>
	Expenditures:			
0035	<u>322 610</u>	<u>322 610</u>	<u>328 374</u>	<u>(5 764)</u>
6030	<u>322 610</u>	<u>322 610</u>	<u>328 374</u>	<u>(5 764)</u>
1100	<u>5 245</u>	<u>5 245</u>	<u>(65 478)</u>	<u>(70 723)</u>
	Other Financing Sources (Uses):			
7900	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>60 635</u>	<u>60 635</u>
	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>60 635</u>	<u>60 635</u>
1200	5 245	5 245	(4 843)	(10 088)
0100	<u>4 843</u>	<u>4 843</u>	<u>4 843</u>	<u>-</u>
3000	<u>\$ 10 088</u>	<u>\$ 10 088</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ (10 088)</u>

See independent auditors' report.



INDEPENDENT AUDITORS' REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL REPORTING  
AND ON COMPLIANCE AND OTHER MATTERS BASED ON AN AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
PERFORMED IN ACCORDANCE WITH *GOVERNMENT AUDITING STANDARDS*

Board of Trustees  
Broaddus Independent School District  
Broaddus, Texas

Members of the Board of Trustees:

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Broaddus Independent School District as of and for the year ended August 31, 2020, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the basic financial statements and have issued our report thereon dated January 11, 2021.

### **Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered Broaddus Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of Broaddus Independent School District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of Broaddus Independent School District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or, significant deficiencies and therefore, material weaknesses or significant deficiencies may exist that have not been identified. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. We did identify a deficiency in internal control described in the accompanying schedule of findings and questioned costs that we consider to be a significant deficiency. See finding 2020-001.

### **Compliance and Other Matters**

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether Broaddus Independent School District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

### **Purpose of this Report**

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the entity's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Lufkin, Texas  
January 11, 2021

  
CERTIFIED PUBLIC ACCOUNTANTS

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS  
 For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

A. Summary of the Auditor's Results

1. Financial Statements

Type of auditor's report issued:	<u>Unmodified</u>	
Internal control over financial reporting:		
Material weakness(es) identified?	___ Yes	<u>X</u> No
Significant deficiencies identified that are not considered to be material weaknesses?	<u>X</u> Yes	___ None reported
Noncompliance material to financial statements noted?	___ Yes	<u>X</u> No

B. Financial Statement Findings

**Finding 2020-001 Segregation of Duties**

**Criteria:** The District should have procedures in place that would ensure proper segregation of certain accounting functions, especially, but not limited to the functions of recording, authorizing, and custody.

**Statement of Condition:** Due to the limited number of administrative personnel, a detailed review and approval of certain accounting functions is necessary but was not performed during the year.

**Cause:** Changes in management personnel and lack of administrative personnel.

**Effect or Potential Effect:** Management, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, may not be able to prevent or detect and correct misstatement on a timely basis.

**Recommendations:** We recommend that the Superintendent and the Board monitor the accounting records and provide appropriate compensating controls to provide assurance that assets are safeguarded and transactions are proper and recorded in a timely manner.

**Contact:** Leah Holloway, Business Manager

**Timeframe:** Ongoing

**View of Responsible Officials and Planned Corrective Action:** The accounting records will be monitored by the Superintendent and the Board on a timely basis. Where possible and appropriate, conflicting duties will be segregated between personnel. Additional administrative staff has been hired, and adequate segregation is expected to be achieved beginning with the 2021 fiscal year.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SUMMARY SCHEDULE OF PRIOR AUDIT FINDINGS  
For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

<u>2019-001</u>	<u>STATUS</u>
Inadequate segregation of duties	Ongoing

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN  
For the Year Ended August 31, 2020

---

2020-001

---

---

PLANNED CORRECTIONS

---

Inadequate segregation of duties

Detailed review and approval will be performed by the Superintendent and monitored by the Board. Additional administrative staff has been hired, and adequate segregation is expected to be achieved beginning with the 2021 fiscal year.

BROADDUS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF REQUIRED RESPONSES TO SELECTED  
SCHOOL FIRST INDICATORS  
As of August 31, 2020

Exhibit L-1

DATA CONTROL CODES		RESPONSES
SF1	Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report on the financial statements as a whole?	Yes
SF2	Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any debt agreement at fiscal year end?	No
SF3	Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other government agencies?	Yes
SF4	Was the school district issued a warrant hold?	No
SF5	Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF6	Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts, and laws related to local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF7	Did the school district post the required financial information on its website in accordance with Government Code, Local Government Code, Texas Education Code, Texas Administration Code and other statutes, laws, rules that were in effect at the school district fiscal year end?	Yes
SF8	Did the school board members discuss the school district's property values at a board meeting within 120 days before the school district adopted its budget?	Yes
SF9	Total accumulated accretion on CABs included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year-end.	\$ N/A

Financial Advisory Services  
Provided By:

